



## **Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS System Management Configuration Guide, Release 6.x**

**First Published:** 2013-01-30

**Last Modified:** 2018-11-29

### **Americas Headquarters**

Cisco Systems, Inc.  
170 West Tasman Drive  
San Jose, CA 95134-1706  
USA  
<http://www.cisco.com>  
Tel: 408 526-4000  
800 553-NETS (6387)  
Fax: 408 527-0883

Text Part Number: OL-27903-03

THE SPECIFICATIONS AND INFORMATION REGARDING THE PRODUCTS IN THIS MANUAL ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. ALL STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS IN THIS MANUAL ARE BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE BUT ARE PRESENTED WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. USERS MUST TAKE FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF ANY PRODUCTS.

THE SOFTWARE LICENSE AND LIMITED WARRANTY FOR THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT ARE SET FORTH IN THE INFORMATION PACKET THAT SHIPPED WITH THE PRODUCT AND ARE INCORPORATED HEREIN BY THIS REFERENCE. IF YOU ARE UNABLE TO LOCATE THE SOFTWARE LICENSE OR LIMITED WARRANTY, CONTACT YOUR CISCO REPRESENTATIVE FOR A COPY.

The Cisco implementation of TCP header compression is an adaptation of a program developed by the University of California, Berkeley (UCB) as part of UCB's public domain version of the UNIX operating system. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1981, Regents of the University of California.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY OTHER WARRANTY HEREIN, ALL DOCUMENT FILES AND SOFTWARE OF THESE SUPPLIERS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH ALL FAULTS. CISCO AND THE ABOVE-NAMED SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THOSE OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MANUAL, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Any Internet Protocol (IP) addresses and phone numbers used in this document are not intended to be actual addresses and phone numbers. Any examples, command display output, network topology diagrams, and other figures included in the document are shown for illustrative purposes only. Any use of actual IP addresses or phone numbers in illustrative content is unintentional and coincidental.

All printed copies and duplicate soft copies of this document are considered uncontrolled. See the current online version for the latest version.

Cisco has more than 200 offices worldwide. Addresses and phone numbers are listed on the Cisco website at [www.cisco.com/go/offices](http://www.cisco.com/go/offices).

Cisco and the Cisco logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Cisco and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. To view a list of Cisco trademarks, go to this URL: [www.cisco.com/go/trademarks](http://www.cisco.com/go/trademarks). Third-party trademarks mentioned are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (1721R)

© 2013 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.



# CONTENTS

---

## PREFACE

<b>Preface</b>	<b>xv</b>
Audience	xv
Document Conventions	xv
Related Documentation for Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Software	xvi
Documentation Feedback	xviii
Obtaining Documentation and Submitting a Service Request	xviii

---

## CHAPTER 1

<b>New and Changed Information</b>	<b>1</b>
New and Changed Information	1

---

## CHAPTER 2

<b>Overview</b>	<b>3</b>
System Management Features	3

---

## CHAPTER 3

<b>Configuring Switch Profiles</b>	<b>7</b>
Information About Switch Profiles	7
Switch Profile Configuration Modes	8
Configuration Validation	9
Software Upgrades and Downgrades with Switch Profiles	10
Prerequisites for Switch Profiles	10
Guidelines and Limitations for Switch Profiles	10
Configuring Switch Profiles	12
Adding a Switch to a Switch Profile	13
Adding or Modifying Switch Profile Commands	14
Importing a Switch Profile	17
Importing Configurations in a vPC Topology	19
Verifying Commands in a Switch Profile	19

Isolating a Peer Switch	20
Deleting a Switch Profile	20
Deleting a Switch from a Switch Profile	21
Displaying the Switch Profile Buffer	22
Synchronizing Configurations After a Switch Reboot	23
Switch Profile Configuration show Commands	23
Configuration Examples for Switch Profiles	24
Creating a Switch Profile on a Local and Peer Switch Example	24
Verifying the Synchronization Status Example	26
Displaying the Running Configuration	27
Displaying the Switch Profile Synchronization Between Local and Peer Switches	27
Displaying Verify and Commit on Local and Peer Switches	28
Successful and Unsuccessful Synchronization Examples	29
Configuring the Switch Profile Buffer, Moving the Buffer, and Deleting the Buffer	30
Sample Migrations Using the Import Command	31
Migrating Cisco NX-OS Release 5.0(2)N1(1) in a Fabric Extender A-A Topology Example	31
Migrating Cisco NX-OS Release 5.0(2)N1(1) in a Fabric Extender Fabric Extender Straight-Through Topology Example	31
Replacing a Cisco Nexus 5000 Series Switch	32

---

<b>CHAPTER 4</b>	<b>Configuring Module Pre-Provisioning</b>	<b>35</b>
	Information About Module Pre-Provisioning	35
	Guidelines and Limitations	35
	Enabling Module Pre-Provisioning	36
	Removing Module Pre-Provisioning	37
	Verifying the Pre-Provisioned Configuration	37
	Configuration Examples for Pre-Provisioning	38

---

<b>CHAPTER 5</b>	<b>Using Cisco Fabric Services</b>	<b>41</b>
	Information About CFS	41
	Cisco Fabric Services over Ethernet	42
	Guidelines and Limitations for CFS	42
	CFS Distribution	43
	CFS Distribution Modes	43

Uncoordinated Distribution	43
Coordinated Distribution	44
Unrestricted Uncoordinated Distributions	44
Verifying the CFS Distribution Status	44
CFS Support for Applications	44
CFS Application Requirements	44
Enabling CFS for an Application	45
Verifying Application Registration Status	45
Locking the Network	46
Verifying CFS Lock Status	46
Committing Changes	47
Discarding Changes	47
Saving the Configuration	47
Clearing a Locked Session	47
CFS Regions	48
About CFS Regions	48
Example Scenario	48
Managing CFS Regions	49
Creating CFS Regions	49
Assigning Applications to CFS Regions	49
Moving an Application to a Different CFS Region	50
Removing an Application from a Region	50
Deleting CFS Regions	51
Configuring CFS over IP	51
Enabling CFS over IPv4	51
Enabling CFS over IPv6	52
Verifying the CFS Over IP Configuration	52
Configuring IP Multicast Addresses for CFS over IP	52
Configuring IPv4 Multicast Address for CFS	52
Configuring IPv6 Multicast Address for CFS	53
Verifying the IP Multicast Address Configuration for CFS over IP	53
Default Settings for CFS	53
Enabling CFS to Distribute Smart Call Home Configurations	54
Enabling CFS to Distribute Device Alias Configurations	55

Enabling CFS to Distribute DPVM Configurations	55
Enabling CFS to Distribute FC Domain Configurations	56
Enabling CFS to Distribute FC Port Security Configurations	57
Enabling CFS to Distribute FC Timer Configurations	58
Enabling CFS to Distribute IVR Configurations	58
Enabling CFS to Distribute NTP Configurations	59
Enabling CFS to Distribute RADIUS Configurations	60
Enabling CFS to Distribute RSCN Configurations	60
Enabling CFS to Distribute TACACS+ Configurations	61

**CHAPTER 6****Configuring PTP 63**

Information About PTP	63
PTP Device Types	64
PTP Process	65
Clock Management	65
High Availability for PTP	66
Licensing Requirements for PTP	66
Guidelines and Limitations for PTP	66
Default Settings for PTP	66
Configuring PTP	67
Configuring PTP Globally	67
Configuring PTP on an Interface	69
Verifying the PTP Configuration	70
Feature History for PTP	71

**CHAPTER 7****Configuring User Accounts and RBAC 73**

Information About User Accounts and RBAC	73
User Roles	73
Predefined SAN Admin User Role	74
Rules	75
SAN Admin Role-Feature Rule Mapping	75
User Role Policies	77
User Account Configuration Restrictions	77
User Password Requirements	78

Guidelines and Limitations for User Accounts	79
Configuring User Accounts	79
Configuring SAN Admin Users	80
Configuring RBAC	81
Creating User Roles and Rules	81
Creating Feature Groups	83
Changing User Role Interface Policies	83
Changing User Role VLAN Policies	84
Changing User Role VSAN Policies	85
Verifying the User Accounts and RBAC Configuration	85
Configuring User Accounts Default Settings for the User Accounts and RBAC	86

---

## CHAPTER 8

### Configuring Session Manager 87

Information About Session Manager	87
Guidelines and Limitations for Session Manager	87
Configuring Session Manager	88
Creating a Session	88
Configuring ACLs in a Session	88
Verifying a Session	89
Committing a Session	89
Saving a Session	89
Discarding a Session	89
Configuration Example for Session Manager	89
Verifying the Session Manager Configuration	90

---

## CHAPTER 9

### Configuring Online Diagnostics 91

Information About Online Diagnostics	91
Bootup Diagnostics	91
Health Monitoring Diagnostics	92
Expansion Module Diagnostics	93
Configuring Online Diagnostics	93
Verifying the Online Diagnostics Configuration	94
Default Settings for Online Diagnostics	94

---

**CHAPTER 10****Configuring System Message Logging 95**

- Information About System Message Logging 95
  - Syslog Servers 96
- Licensing Requirements for System Message Logging 96
- Guidelines and Limitations for System Message Logging 96
- Default Settings for System Message Logging 96
- Configuring System Message Logging 97
  - Configuring System Message Logging to Terminal Sessions 97
  - Configuring System Message Logging to a File 99
  - Configuring Module and Facility Messages Logging 101
  - Configuring Logging Timestamps 102
  - Configuring Syslog Servers 103
    - Configuring syslog on a UNIX or Linux System 105
  - Configuring syslog Server Configuration Distribution 106
  - Displaying and Clearing Log Files 107
- Verifying the System Message Logging Configuration 108
- Configuring ACL Logging 109
  - Information About ACL Logging 109
  - Configuring the ACL Logging Cache 110
  - Applying ACL Logging to an Interface 111
  - Configuring the ACL Log Match Level 111
  - Configuring Rate Limiter for ACL Logging 112
  - Clearing ACL Logs 112
  - Verifying ACL Logging 113

---

**CHAPTER 11****Configuring Smart Call Home 115**

- Information About Smart Call Home 115
  - Smart Call Home Overview 116
  - Smart Call Home Destination Profiles 116
  - Smart Call Home Alert Groups 117
  - Smart Call Home Message Levels 118
  - Call Home Message Formats 119
- Guidelines and Limitations for Smart Call Home 123



Prerequisites for Smart Call Home	123
Default Call Home Settings	123
Configuring Smart Call Home	124
Registering for Smart Call Home	124
Configuring Contact Information	124
Creating a Destination Profile	126
Modifying a Destination Profile	127
Associating an Alert Group with a Destination Profile	129
Adding Show Commands to an Alert Group	129
Configuring E-Mail Server Details	130
Configuring Periodic Inventory Notifications	131
Disabling Duplicate Message Throttling	132
Enabling or Disabling Smart Call Home	133
Testing the Smart Call Home Configuration	133
Verifying the Smart Call Home Configuration	134
Sample Syslog Alert Notification in Full-Text Format	134
Sample Syslog Alert Notification in XML Format	135

---

## CHAPTER 12

<b>Configuring Rollback</b>	<b>139</b>
Information About Rollbacks	139
Guidelines and Limitations for Rollback	139
Creating a Checkpoint	140
Implementing a Rollback	141
Verifying the Rollback Configuration	141

---

## CHAPTER 13

<b>Configuring DNS</b>	<b>143</b>
Information About DNS Client	143
Name Servers	143
DNS Operation	143
High Availability	144
Prerequisites for DNS Clients	144
Licensing Requirements for DNS Clients	144
Default Settings for DNS Clients	144
Configuring DNS Clients	144

---

**CHAPTER 14****Configuring SNMP 147**

Information About SNMP 147

SNMP Functional Overview 147

SNMP Notifications 148

SNMPv3 148

Security Models and Levels for SNMPv1, v2, and v3 148

User-Based Security Model 149

CLI and SNMP User Synchronization 150

Group-Based SNMP Access 151

Licensing Requirements for SNMP 151

Guidelines and Limitations for SNMP 151

Default SNMP Settings 151

Configuring SNMP 152

Configuring SNMP Users 152

Enforcing SNMP Message Encryption 153

Assigning SNMPv3 Users to Multiple Roles 153

Creating SNMP Communities 153

Filtering SNMP Requests 153

Configuring SNMP Notification Receivers 154

Configuring SNMP Notification Receivers with VRFs 155

Filtering SNMP Notifications Based on a VRF 156

Configuring a Source Interface for Sending Out All SNMP Notifications 157

Configuring a Host Receiver for SNMP Notifications 157

Configuring SNMP for Inband Access 158

Enabling SNMP Notifications 159

Configuring Link Notifications 161

Disabling Link Notifications on an Interface 162

Enabling One-Time Authentication for SNMP over TCP 162

Assigning SNMP Switch Contact and Location Information 163

Configuring the Context to Network Entity Mapping 163

Modifying the AAA Synchronization Time 164

Disabling SNMP 164

Verifying the SNMP Configuration 164

---

**CHAPTER 15****Configuring RMON 167**

- Information About RMON 167
  - RMON Alarms 167
  - RMON Events 168
- Configuration Guidelines and Limitations for RMON 168
- Configuring RMON 168
  - Configuring RMON Alarms 168
  - Configuring RMON Events 170
- Verifying the RMON Configuration 170
- Default RMON Settings 170

---

**CHAPTER 16****Configuring SPAN 173**

- Information About SPAN 173
- SPAN Sources 173
- Characteristics of Source Ports 174
- SPAN Destinations 174
- Characteristics of Destination Ports 175
- Guidelines and Limitations for SPAN 175
- Creating or Deleting a SPAN Session 176
- Configuring an Ethernet Destination Port 176
- Configuring MTU Truncation for Each SPAN Session 178
- Configuring Fibre Channel Destination Port 179
- Configuring Source Ports 180
- Configuring Source Port Channels, VSANs, or VLANs 181
- Configuring the Description of a SPAN Session 182
- Activating a SPAN Session 182
- Suspending a SPAN Session 183
- Troubleshooting SPAN session issues 183
  - Troubleshooting SPAN session with large number of source ports issues 183
- Displaying SPAN Information 184

---

**CHAPTER 17****Configuring ERSPAN 187**

- Information About ERSPAN 187

ERSPAN Source Sessions	187
Monitored Traffic	188
ERSPAN Types	188
ERSPAN Sources	189
Truncated ERSPAN	189
Multiple ERSPAN Sessions	189
High Availability	190
Licensing Requirements for ERSPAN	190
Prerequisites for ERSPAN	190
Guidelines and Limitations for ERSPAN	190
Guidelines and Limitations for ERSPAN Type III	191
Default Settings for ERSPAN	191
Configuring ERSPAN	192
Configuring an ERSPAN Source Session	192
Configuring an ERSPAN Type III Source Session	194
Configuring Truncated ERSPAN	196
Shutting Down or Activating an ERSPAN Session	197
Verifying the ERSPAN Configuration	199
Configuration Examples for ERSPAN	199
Configuration Example for an ERSPAN Source Session	199
Configuration Example for an ERSPAN Type III Source Session	200
Configuration Example for an IP Address as the Source for an ERSPAN Session	200
Configuration Example for Truncated ERSPAN	200
Additional References	201
Related Documents	201

---

**CHAPTER 18**
**Configuring NTP 203**

Information About NTP	203
Information About the NTP Server	203
NTP as Time Server	204
Distributing NTP Using CFS	204
Clock Manager	204
High Availability	204
Licensing Requirements	205

Prerequisites for NTP	205
Guidelines and Limitations for NTP	205
Default Settings for NTP	206
Configuring NTP	206
Enabling or Disabling NTP	206
Configuring the Device as an Authoritative NTP Server	207
Configuring an NTP Server and Peer	208
Configuring NTP Authentication	209
Configuring NTP Access Restrictions	211
Configuring the NTP Source IP Address	212
Configuring the NTP Source Interface	213
Configuring NTP Logging	213
Enabling CFS Distribution for NTP	214
Committing NTP Configuration Changes	214
Discarding NTP Configuration Changes	215
Releasing the CFS Session Lock	215
Verifying the NTP Configuration	215
Configuration Examples for NTP	216

---

## CHAPTER 19

<b>Configuring EEM</b>	<b>219</b>
Information About Embedded Event Manager	219
EEM Policies	220
EEM Event Statement	221
EEM Action Statements	222
VSH Script Policies	222
EEM Event Correlation	222
EEM Virtualization Support	223
EEM Licensing Requirements	223
Prerequisites for EEM	223
Guidelines and Limitations for EEM	223
Default Settings for EEM	224
Configuring EEM	224
Defining an Environment Variable	224
Defining a User Policy Using the CLI	225

Event Statement Configuration	226
Action Statement Configuration	228
Defining a Policy Using a VSH Script	230
Registering and Activating a VSH Script Policy	230
Overriding a Policy	231
Configuring the Syslog as an EEM Publisher	232
Defining a User Policy Using the CLI to Trigger a Tcl Script	233
Defining a User Policy Using the CLI to Trigger a Python Script	235
Verifying the EEM Configuration	236
Configuration Examples for EEM	237



## Preface

The preface contains the following sections:

- [Audience, on page xv](#)
- [Document Conventions, on page xv](#)
- [Related Documentation for Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Software, on page xvi](#)
- [Documentation Feedback, on page xviii](#)
- [Obtaining Documentation and Submitting a Service Request, on page xviii](#)

## Audience

This publication is for network administrators who configure and maintain Cisco Nexus devices.

## Document Conventions



### Note

As part of our constant endeavor to remodel our documents to meet our customers' requirements, we have modified the manner in which we document configuration tasks. As a result of this, you may find a deviation in the style used to describe these tasks, with the newly included sections of the document following the new format.

Command descriptions use the following conventions:

Convention	Description
<b>bold</b>	Bold text indicates the commands and keywords that you enter literally as shown.
<i>Italic</i>	Italic text indicates arguments for which the user supplies the values.
[x]	Square brackets enclose an optional element (keyword or argument).
[x   y]	Square brackets enclosing keywords or arguments separated by a vertical bar indicate an optional choice.

Convention	Description
{x   y}	Braces enclosing keywords or arguments separated by a vertical bar indicate a required choice.
[x {y   z}]	Nested set of square brackets or braces indicate optional or required choices within optional or required elements. Braces and a vertical bar within square brackets indicate a required choice within an optional element.
<i>variable</i>	Indicates a variable for which you supply values, in context where italics cannot be used.
string	A nonquoted set of characters. Do not use quotation marks around the string or the string will include the quotation marks.

Examples use the following conventions:

Convention	Description
<code>screen font</code>	Terminal sessions and information the switch displays are in screen font.
<b>boldface screen font</b>	Information you must enter is in boldface screen font.
<i>italic screen font</i>	Arguments for which you supply values are in italic screen font.
< >	Nonprinting characters, such as passwords, are in angle brackets.
[ ]	Default responses to system prompts are in square brackets.
!, #	An exclamation point (!) or a pound sign (#) at the beginning of a line of code indicates a comment line.

This document uses the following conventions:



#### Note

Means *reader take note*. Notes contain helpful suggestions or references to material not covered in the manual.



#### Caution

Means *reader be careful*. In this situation, you might do something that could result in equipment damage or loss of data.

## Related Documentation for Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Software

The entire Cisco NX-OS 5500 Series documentation set is available at the following URL:

<http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/switches/nexus-5000-series-switches/tsd-products-support-series-home.html>



## Release Notes

The release notes are available at the following URL:

[http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps9670/prod\\_release\\_notes\\_list.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps9670/prod_release_notes_list.html)

## Configuration Guides

These guides are available at the following URL:

[http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps9670/products\\_installation\\_and\\_configuration\\_guides\\_list.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps9670/products_installation_and_configuration_guides_list.html)

The documents in this category include:

- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Adapter-FEX Configuration Guide*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS FabricPath Configuration Guide*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS FCoE Configuration Guide*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Fundamentals Configuration Guide*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Interfaces Configuration Guide*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Layer 2 Switching Configuration Guide*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Multicast Routing Configuration Guide*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Quality of Service Configuration Guide*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS SAN Switching Configuration Guide*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Security Configuration Guide*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS System Management Configuration Guide*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide*

## Installation and Upgrade Guides

These guides are available at the following URL:

[http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps9670/prod\\_installation\\_guides\\_list.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps9670/prod_installation_guides_list.html)

The document in this category include:

- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Software Upgrade and Downgrade Guides*

## Licensing Guide

The *License and Copyright Information for Cisco NX-OS Software* is available at

[http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/switches/datacenter/sw/4\\_0/nx-os/license\\_agreement/nx-ossww\\_lisns.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/switches/datacenter/sw/4_0/nx-os/license_agreement/nx-ossww_lisns.html).

## Command References

These guides are available at the following URL:

[http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps9670/prod\\_command\\_reference\\_list.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps9670/prod_command_reference_list.html)

The documents in this category include:

- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Fabric Extender Command Reference*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS FabricPath Command Reference*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Fundamentals Command Reference*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Interfaces Command Reference*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Layer 2 Interfaces Command Reference*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Multicast Routing Command Reference*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Quality of Service Command Reference*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Security Command Reference*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS System Management Command Reference*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS TrustSec Command Reference*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Command Reference*
- *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Virtual Port Channel Command Reference*

### Technical References

The *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS MIB Reference* is available at [http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/switches/datacenter/nexus5500/sw/mib/reference/NX5500\\_MIBRef.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/switches/datacenter/nexus5500/sw/mib/reference/NX5500_MIBRef.html).

### Error and System Messages

The *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS System Message Guide* is available at [http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/switches/datacenter/nexus5500/sw/system\\_messages/reference/sl\\_nxos\\_book.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/switches/datacenter/nexus5500/sw/system_messages/reference/sl_nxos_book.html).

### Troubleshooting Guide

The *Cisco Nexus 5500 Series NX-OS Troubleshooting Guide* is available at [http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/switches/datacenter/nexus5500/sw/troubleshooting/guide/N5K\\_Troubleshooting\\_Guide.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/switches/datacenter/nexus5500/sw/troubleshooting/guide/N5K_Troubleshooting_Guide.html).

## Documentation Feedback

To provide technical feedback on this document, or to report an error or omission, please send your comments to: .

We appreciate your feedback.

## Obtaining Documentation and Submitting a Service Request

For information on obtaining documentation, using the Cisco Bug Search Tool (BST), submitting a service request, and gathering additional information, see [What's New in Cisco Product Documentation](#).

To receive new and revised Cisco technical content directly to your desktop, you can subscribe to the [What's New in Cisco Product Documentation RSS feed](#). RSS feeds are a free service.



## CHAPTER 1

# New and Changed Information

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [New and Changed Information, on page 1](#)

## New and Changed Information

The following table provides an overview of the significant changes made to this configuration guide. The table does not provide an exhaustive list of all changes made to this guide or all new features in a particular release.

Feature	Description	Release	Where Documented
NTP	The Network Time Protocol (NTP) synchronizes the time of day among a set of distributed time servers and clients so that you can correlate events when you receive system logs and other time-specific events from multiple network devices.	6.0(2)N2(1)	<a href="#">Configuring NTP, on page 203</a>
EMM	The Embedded Event Manager (EEM) monitors events that occur on your device and takes action to recover or troubleshoot these events, based on your configuration.	6.0(2)N2(1)	<a href="#">Configuring EEM, on page 219</a>





## CHAPTER 2

# Overview

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [System Management Features, on page 3](#)

## System Management Features

The system management features documented in this guide are described below:

Feature	Description
Switch Profiles	<p>Configuration synchronization allows administrators to make configuration changes on one switch and have the system automatically synchronize the configuration to a peer switch. This feature eliminates misconfigurations and reduces the administrative overhead.</p> <p>The configuration synchronization mode (config-sync) allows users to create switch profiles to synchronize local and peer switch.</p>
Module Pre-Provisioning	<p>Module pre-provisioning feature allows users to pre-configure interfaces before inserting or attaching a module to a Cisco Nexus Series switch. If a module goes offline, users can also use pre-provisioning to make changes to the interface configurations for the offline module. In some vPC topologies, pre-provisioning is required for the configuration synchronization feature. Pre-provisioning allows users to synchronize the configuration for an interface that is online with one peer but offline with another peer.</p>
Cisco Fabric Services	<p>The Cisco MDS NX-OS software uses the Cisco Fabric Services (CFS) infrastructure to enable efficient database distribution and to promote device flexibility. CFS simplifies SAN provisioning by automatically distributing configuration information to all switches in a fabric.</p>

Feature	Description
Precision Time Protocol	The Precision Time Protocol (PTP) is a time synchronization protocol for nodes distributed across a network. Its hardware timestamp feature provides greater accuracy than other time synchronization protocols such as Network Time Protocol (NTP).
User Accounts and RBAC	User accounts and role-based access control (RBAC) allow you to define the rules for an assigned role. Roles restrict the authorization that the user has to access management operations. Each user role can contain multiple rules and each user can have multiple roles.
Session Manager	Session Manager allows you to create a configuration and apply it in batch mode after the configuration is reviewed and verified for accuracy and completeness.
Online Diagnostics	<p>Cisco Generic Online Diagnostics (GOLD) define a common framework for diagnostic operations across Cisco platforms. The online diagnostic framework specifies the platform-independent fault-detection architecture for centralized and distributed systems, including the common diagnostics CLI and the platform-independent fault-detection procedures for boot-up and run-time diagnostics.</p> <p>The platform-specific diagnostics provide hardware-specific fault-detection tests and allow you to take appropriate corrective action in response to diagnostic test results.</p>
System Message Logging	<p>You can use system message logging to control the destination and to filter the severity level of messages that system processes generate. You can configure logging to a terminal session, a log file, and syslog servers on remote systems.</p> <p>System message logging is based on RFC 3164. For more information about the system message format and the messages that the device generates, see the <i>Cisco NX-OS System Messages Reference</i>.</p>
Smart Call Home	Call Home provides an e-mail-based notification of critical system policies. Cisco NX-OS provides a range of message formats for optimal compatibility with pager services, standard e-mail, or XML-based automated parsing applications. You can use this feature to page a network support engineer, e-mail a Network Operations Center, or use Cisco Smart Call Home services to automatically generate a case with the Technical Assistance Center.

Feature	Description
Configuration Rollback	The configuration rollback feature allows users to take a snapshot, or user checkpoint, of the Cisco NX-OS configuration and then reapply that configuration to a switch at any point without having to reload the switch. A rollback allows any authorized administrator to apply this checkpoint configuration without requiring expert knowledge of the features configured in the checkpoint.
SNMP	The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is an application-layer protocol that provides a message format for communication between SNMP managers and agents. SNMP provides a standardized framework and a common language used for the monitoring and management of devices in a network.
RMON	RMON is an Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) standard monitoring specification that allows various network agents and console systems to exchange network monitoring data. Cisco NX-OS supports RMON alarms, events, and logs to monitor Cisco NX-OS devices.
SPAN	The Switched Port Analyzer (SPAN) feature (sometimes called port mirroring or port monitoring) selects network traffic for analysis by a network analyzer. The network analyzer can be a Cisco SwitchProbe, a Fibre Channel Analyzer, or other Remote Monitoring (RMON) probes.

Feature	Description
ERSPAN	<p>Encapsulated remote switched port analyzer (ERSPAN) is used to transport mirrored traffic in an IP network. ERSPAN supports source ports, source VLANs, and destinations on different switches, which provide remote monitoring of multiple switches across your network. ERSPAN uses a generic routing encapsulation (GRE) tunnel to carry traffic between switches.</p> <p>ERSPAN consists of an ERSPAN source session, routable ERSPAN GRE-encapsulated traffic, and an ERSPAN destination session. You separately configure ERSPAN source sessions and destination sessions on different switches.</p> <p>To configure an ERSPAN source session on one switch, you associate a set of source ports or VLANs with a destination IP address, ERSPAN ID number, and virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) name. To configure an ERSPAN destination session on another switch, you associate the destinations with the source IP address, the ERSPAN ID number, and a VRF name.</p> <p>The ERSPAN source session copies traffic from the source ports or source VLANs and forwards the traffic using routable GRE-encapsulated packets to the ERSPAN destination session. The ERSPAN destination session switches the traffic to the destinations.</p>





## CHAPTER 3

# Configuring Switch Profiles

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About Switch Profiles, on page 7](#)
- [Switch Profile Configuration Modes, on page 8](#)
- [Configuration Validation, on page 9](#)
- [Software Upgrades and Downgrades with Switch Profiles, on page 10](#)
- [Prerequisites for Switch Profiles, on page 10](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for Switch Profiles, on page 10](#)
- [Configuring Switch Profiles, on page 12](#)
- [Adding a Switch to a Switch Profile, on page 13](#)
- [Adding or Modifying Switch Profile Commands, on page 14](#)
- [Importing a Switch Profile, on page 17](#)
- [Importing Configurations in a vPC Topology, on page 19](#)
- [Verifying Commands in a Switch Profile, on page 19](#)
- [Isolating a Peer Switch, on page 20](#)
- [Deleting a Switch Profile, on page 20](#)
- [Deleting a Switch from a Switch Profile, on page 21](#)
- [Displaying the Switch Profile Buffer, on page 22](#)
- [Synchronizing Configurations After a Switch Reboot, on page 23](#)
- [Switch Profile Configuration show Commands, on page 23](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Switch Profiles, on page 24](#)

## Information About Switch Profiles

Several applications require consistent configuration across Cisco Nexus Series switches in the network. For example, with a Virtual Port Channel (vPC), you must have identical configurations. Mismatched configurations can cause errors or misconfigurations that can result in service disruptions.

The configuration synchronization (config-sync) feature allows you to configure one switch profile and have the configuration be automatically synchronized to the peer switch. A switch profile provides the following benefits:

- Allows configurations to be synchronized between switches.
- Merges configurations when connectivity is established between two switches.

- Provides control of exactly which configuration gets synchronized.
- Ensures configuration consistency across peers through merge and mutual-exclusion checks.
- Provides verify and commit semantics.
- Supports configuring and synchronizing port profile configurations.
- Provides an import command to migrate existing vPC configurations to a switch profile.

## Switch Profile Configuration Modes

The switch profile feature includes the following configuration modes:

- Configuration Synchronization Mode
- Switch Profile Mode
- Switch Profile Import Mode

### Configuration Synchronization Mode

The configuration synchronization mode (config-sync) allows you to create switch profiles using the **config sync** command on the local switch that you want to use as the master. After you create the profile, you can enter the **config sync** command on the peer switch that you want to synchronize.

### Switch Profile Mode

The switch profile mode allows you to add supported configuration commands to a switch profile that is later synchronized with a peer switch. Commands that you enter in the switch profile mode are buffered until you enter the **commit** command.

### Switch Profile Import Mode

When you upgrade from an earlier release, you have the option to enter the **import** command to copy supported running-configuration commands to a switch profile. After entering the **import** command, the switch profile mode (config-sync-sp) changes to the switch profile import mode (config-sync-sp-import). The switch profile import mode allows you to import existing switch configurations from the running configuration and specify which commands you want to include in the switch profile.

Because different topologies require different commands that are included in a switch profile, the **import** command mode allows you to modify the imported set of commands to suit a specific topology. For example, a dual homed Fabric Extender (FEX) topology requires that most of the configuration is synchronized. In other vPC topologies, the configuration that needs to be synchronized might be a much smaller set of commands.

You need to enter the **commit** command to complete the import process and move the configuration into the switch profile. Because configuration changes are not supported during the import process, if you added new commands before entering the **commit** command, the switch profile remains unsaved and the switch remains in the switch profile import mode. You can remove the added commands or abort the import. Unsaved configurations are lost if the process is aborted. You can add new commands to the switch profile after the import is complete.

# Configuration Validation

Two types of configuration validation checks can identify two types of switch profile failures:

- Mutual Exclusion Checks
- Merge Checks

## Mutual Exclusion Checks

To reduce the possibility of overriding configuration settings that are included in a switch profile, mutual exclusion (mutex) checks the switch profile commands against the commands that exist on the local switch and the commands on the peer switch. A command that is included in a switch profile cannot be configured outside of the switch profile or on a peer switch. This requirement reduces the possibility that an existing command is unintentionally overwritten.

As a part of the commit process, the mutex-check occurs on both switches if the peer switch is reachable; otherwise, the mutex-check is performed locally. Configuration changes made from the configuration terminal occur only on the local switch.

If a mutex-check identifies errors, they are reported as mutex failures and they must be manually corrected.

The following exceptions apply to the mutual exclusion policy:

- Interface configuration—Port channel interfaces must be configured fully in either switch profile mode or global configuration mode.



### Note

Several port channel subcommands are not configurable in switch profile mode. These commands can be configured from global configuration mode even if the port channel is created and configured in switch profile mode.

For example, the following command can only be configured in global configuration mode:

```
switchport private-vlan association trunk primary-vlan secondary-vlan
```

- Shutdown/no shutdown
- System QoS

## Merge Checks

Merge checks are done on the peer switch that is receiving a configuration. The merge checks ensure that the received configuration does not conflict with the switch profile configuration that already exists on the receiving switch. The merge check occurs during the merge or commit process. Errors are reported as merge failures and must be manually corrected.

When one or both switches are reloaded and the configurations are synchronized for the first time, the merge check verifies that the switch profile configurations are identical on both switches. Differences in the switch profiles are reported as merge errors and must be manually corrected.

# Software Upgrades and Downgrades with Switch Profiles

When you downgrade to an earlier release, you are prompted to remove an existing switch profile that is not supported on earlier releases.

When you upgrade from an earlier release, you have the option to move some of the running-configuration commands to a switch profile. The **import** command allows you to import relevant switch profile commands. An upgrade can occur if there are buffered configurations (uncommitted); however, the uncommitted configurations are lost.

When you perform an In Service Software Upgrade (ISSU) on one of the switches included in a switch profile, a configuration synchronization cannot occur because the peer is unreachable.

## Prerequisites for Switch Profiles

Switch profiles have the following prerequisites:

- You must enable Cisco Fabric Series over IP (CFS over IP) distribution over mgmt0 on both switches by entering the **cfs ipv4 distribute** command.
- You must configure a switch profile with the same name on both peer switches by entering the **config sync** and **switch-profile** commands.
- Configure each switch as peer switch by entering the **sync-peers destination** command

## Guidelines and Limitations for Switch Profiles

The Switch profile has the following guidelines and limitations:

- You can only enable configuration synchronization using the mgmt0 interface.
- Configuration synchronization is performed using the mgmt 0 interface and cannot be performed using a management SVI.
- You must configure synchronized peers with the same switch profile name.
- Commands that are qualified for a switch profile configuration are allowed to be configured in the configuration switch profile (config-sync-sp) mode.
- Supported switch profile commands relate to virtual port channel (vPC) commands. Fiber Channel over Ethernet (FCoE) commands are not supported.
- One switch profile session can be in progress at a time. Attempts to start another session will fail.
- Supported command changes made from the configuration terminal mode are blocked when a switch profile session is in progress. You should not make unsupported command changes from the configuration terminal mode when a switch profile session is in progress.
- When you enter the **commit** command and a peer switch is reachable, the configuration is applied to both peer switches or neither switch. If there is a commit failure, the commands remain in the switch profile buffer. You can then make necessary corrections and try the commit again.

- We recommend that you enable preprovisioning for all Generic Expansion Modules (GEMs) and Cisco Nexus Fabric Extender modules whose interface configurations are synchronized using the configuration synchronization feature. Follow these guidelines in Cisco Nexus Fabric Extender active/active topologies where the Fabric Extenders might not be online on one switch and its configuration is changed and synchronized on the other switch. In this scenario, if you do not enable preprovisioning, a commit fails and the configuration is rolled back on both switches.
- Once a port channel is configured using switch profile mode, it cannot be configured using global configuration (config terminal) mode.



**Note** Several port channel subcommands are not configurable in switch profile mode. These commands can be configured from global configuration mode even if the port channel is created and configured in switch profile mode.

For example, the following command can only be configured in global configuration mode:

```
switchport private-vlan association trunk primary-vlan secondary-vlan
```

- Shutdown and no shutdown can be configured in either global configuration mode or switch profile mode.
- If a port channel is created in global configuration mode, channel groups including member interfaces must also be created using global configuration mode.
- Port channels that are configured within switch profile mode may have members both inside and outside of a switch profile.
- If you want to import a member interface to a switch profile, the port channel including the member interface must also be present within the switch profile.

### Guidelines for Synchronizing After Reboot, Connectivity Loss, or Failure

- Synchronizing configurations after vPC peer link failure—If both switches are operational when a peer link fails, the secondary switch shuts down its vPC ports. In a Fabric Extender A/A topology, the A/A Fabric Extender disconnects from the secondary switch. If the configuration is changed using a switch profile on the primary switch, configurations are not accepted on the secondary switch unless the A/A Fabric Extender is preprovisioned. When using the configuration synchronization feature, we recommend that you preprovision all A/A Fabric Extenders.
- Synchronizing configurations after mgmt0 interface connectivity loss—When mgmt0 interface connectivity is lost and configuration changes are required, apply the configuration changes on both switches using the switch profile. When connectivity to the mgmt0 interface is restored, both switches synchronize automatically.

If a configuration change is made on only one switch, a merge occurs when the mgmt0 interface comes up and the configuration is applied on the other switch.

- Synchronizing configurations when an ISSU is performed on one switch and a configuration change is made on the peer switch—In a vPC topology, configuration changes on the peer switch are not allowed when an ISSU is performed on the other switch. In topologies without vPCs, configuration changes are allowed and the switch undergoing an ISSU synchronizes new configurations when the upgrade is complete.

# Configuring Switch Profiles

You can create and configure a switch profile. Enter the **switch-profile** *name* command in the configuration synchronization mode (config-sync).

## Before you begin

You must create the switch profile with the same name on each switch and the switches must configure each other as a peer. When connectivity is established between switches with the same active switch profile, the switch profiles are synchronized.

## Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>cfs ipv4 distribute</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# cfs ipv4 distribute switch(config)#</pre>	Enables CFS distribution between the peer switches.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>config sync</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# config sync switch(config-sync)#</pre>	Enters configuration synchronization mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>switch-profile</b> <i>name</i>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc switch(config-sync-sp)#</pre>	Configures the switch profile, names the switch profile, and enters switch profile synchronization configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>sync-peers destination</b> <i>IP-address</i>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp)# sync-peers destination 10.1.1.1 switch(config-sync-sp)#</pre>	Configures the peer switch.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>(Optional) show switch-profile</b> <i>name</i> <b>status</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile abc status switch(config-sync-sp)#</pre>	Views the switch profile on the local switch and the peer switch information.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b>	Exits the switch profile configuration mode and returns to EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	switch(config-sync-sp)# exit switch#	
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure a switch profile and shows the switch profile status.

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# cfs ipv4 distribute
switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc
switch(config-sync-sp)# sync-peers destination 10.1.1.1
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile abc status
Start-time: 15801 usecs after Mon Aug 23 06:21:08 2010
End-time: 6480 usecs after Mon Aug 23 06:21:13 2010

Profile-Revision: 1
Session-type: Initial-Exchange
Peer-triggered: Yes
Profile-status: Sync Success

Local information:
-----
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

Peer information:
-----
IP-address: 10.1.1.1
Sync-status: In Sync.
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):
switch(config-sync-sp)# exit
switch#
```

## Adding a Switch to a Switch Profile

Enter the **sync-peers destination** *destination IP* command in switch profile configuration mode to add the switch to a switch profile.

Follow these guidelines when adding switches:

- Switches are identified by their IP address.
- Destination IPs are the IP addresses of the switches that you want to synchronize.
- The committed switch profile is synchronized with the newly added peers (when they are online) if the peer switch is also configured with configuration synchronization.

If you want to import a member interface to a switch profile, the port channel including the member interface must also be present within the switch profile.

**Before you begin**

After creating a switch profile on the local switch, you must add the second switch that will be included in the synchronization.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>config sync</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# config sync switch(config-sync)#</pre>	Enters configuration synchronization mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>switch-profile name</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc switch(config-sync-sp)#</pre>	Configures switch profile, names the switch profile, and enters switch profile synchronization configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>sync-peers destination destination IP</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp)# sync-peers destination 10.1.1.1 switch(config-sync-sp)#</pre>	Adds a switch to the switch profile.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp)# exit switch#</pre>	Exits switch profile configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>(Optional) show switch-profile peer</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# show switch-profile peer</pre>	Displays the switch profile peer configuration.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>(Optional) copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Adding or Modifying Switch Profile Commands

To modify a command in a switch profile, add the modified command to the switch profile and enter the **commit** command to apply the command and synchronize the switch profile to the peer switch if it is reachable.

Follow these guidelines when adding or modifying switch profile commands:

- Commands that are added or modified are buffered until you enter the **commit** command.
- Commands are executed in the same order in which they are buffered. If there is an order-dependency for certain commands, for example, a QoS policy must be defined before being applied, you must maintain



that order; otherwise, the commit might fail. You can use utility commands, such as the **show switch-profile name buffer** command, the **buffer-delete** command, or the **buffer-move** command, to change the buffer and correct the order of already entered commands.

### Before you begin

After configuring a switch profile on the local and the peer switch, you must add and commit the supported commands to the switch profile. The commands are added to the switch profile buffer until you enter the **commit** command. The **commit** command does the following:

- Triggers the mutex check and the merge check to verify the synchronization.
- Creates a checkpoint with a rollback infrastructure.
- Applies the configuration on the local switch and the peer switch.
- Executes a rollback on all switches if there is a failure with an application on any of the switches in the switch profile.
- Deletes the checkpoint.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>config sync</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# config sync switch(config-sync) #</pre>	Enters configuration synchronization mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>switch-profile name</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync) # switch-profile abc switch(config-sync-sp) #</pre>	Configures the switch profile, names the switch profile, and enters switch profile synchronization configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<i>Command argument</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp) # interface Port-channel100 switch(config-sync-sp-if) # speed 1000 switch(config-sync-sp-if) # interface Ethernet1/1 switch(config-sync-sp-if) # speed 1000 switch(config-sync-sp-if) # channel-group 100</pre>	Adds a command to the switch profile.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) <b>show switch-profile name buffer</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp) # show switch-profile abc buffer switch(config-sync-sp) #</pre>	Displays the configuration commands in the switch profile buffer.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>verify</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-sync-sp) # verify	Verifies the commands in the switch profile buffer.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>commit</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-sync-sp) # commit	Saves the commands in the switch profile and synchronizes the configuration with the peer switch.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) <b>show switch-profile name status</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-sync-sp) # show switch-profile abc status switch(config-sync-sp) #	Displays the status of the switch profile on the local switch and the status on the peer switch.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-sync-sp) # exit switch#	Exits the switch profile configuration mode.
<b>Step 9</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to create a switch profile, configure a peer switch, and add commands to the switch profile.

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# cfs ipv4 distribute
switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc
switch(config-sync-sp)# sync-peers destination 10.1.1.1
switch(config-sync-sp)# interface port-channel100
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# speed 1000
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# interface Ethernet1/1
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# speed 1000
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# channel-group 100
switch(config-sync-sp)# verify
switch(config-sync-sp)# commit
switch(config-sync-sp)# exit
switch#
```

The following example shows an existing configuration with a defined switch profile. The second example shows how the switch profile command changed by adding the modified command to the switch profile.

```
switch# show running-config
switch-profile abc
  interface Ethernet1/1
    switchport mode trunk
```

```

switchport trunk allowed vlan 1-10

switch# config sync
switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc
switch(config-sync-sp)# interface Ethernet1/1
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 5-10
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# commit

switch# show running-config
switch-profile abc
  interface Ethernet1/1
    switchport mode trunk
    switchport trunk allowed vlan 5-10

```

## Importing a Switch Profile

You can import a switch profile based on the set of commands that you want to import. Using the configuration terminal mode, you can do the following:

- Add selected commands to the switch profile.
- Add supported commands that were specified for an interface.
- Add supported system-level commands.
- Add supported system-level commands excluding the physical interface commands.

When you import commands to a switch profile, the switch profile buffer must be empty.

If new commands are added during the import, the switch profile remains unsaved and the switch remains in the switch profile import mode. You can enter the **abort** command to stop the import. For additional information importing a switch profile, see the “Switch Profile Import Mode” section.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>config sync</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# config sync switch(config-sync)#</pre>	Enters configuration synchronization mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>switch-profile name</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc switch(config-sync-sp)#</pre>	Configures the switch profile, names the switch profile, and enters switch profile synchronization configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>import {interface port/slot   running-config [exclude interface ethernet]}</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp)# import ethernet 1/2 switch(config-sync-sp-import)#</pre>	Identifies the commands that you want to import and enters switch profile import mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• &lt;CR&gt;—Adds selected commands.</li> <li>• <b>interface</b>—Adds the supported commands for a specified interface.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>running-config</b>—Adds supported system-level commands.</li> <li>• <b>running-config exclude interface ethernet</b>—Adds supported system-level commands excluding the physical interface commands.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> If this is a QSFP+ GEM or a breakout port, the <i>port</i> syntax is <i>QSFP-module/port</i>.</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>commit</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>switch(config-sync-sp-import)# commit</code>	Imports the commands and saves the commands to the switch profile.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) <b>abort</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>switch(config-sync-sp-import)# abort</code>	Aborts the import process.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>switch(config-sync-sp)# exit</code> <code>switch#</code>	Exits switch profile import mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) <b>show switch-profile</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>switch# show switch-profile</code>	Displays the switch profile configuration.
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>switch# copy running-config startup-config</code>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to import supported system-level commands excluding the Ethernet interface commands into the switch profile named sp:

```
switch(config-vlan)# conf sync
switch(config-sync)# switch-profile sp
Switch-Profile started, Profile ID is 1
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile buffer
```

```
switch-profile : sp
```

```
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----
```

```

switch(config-sync-sp)# import running-config exclude interface ethernet
switch(config-sync-sp-import)#
switch(config-sync-sp-import)# show switch-profile buffer

switch-profile : sp
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----
3       vlan 100-299
4       vlan 300
4.1     state suspend
5       vlan 301-345
6       interface port-channel100
6.1     spanning-tree port type network
7       interface port-channel105

switch(config-sync-sp-import)#

```

## Importing Configurations in a vPC Topology

You can import configurations in a two-switch vPC topology.



**Note** For specific information about the following steps, see the appropriate sections in this chapter.

1. Configure the switch profile with the same name on both switches.
2. Import the configurations to both switches independently.



**Note** Ensure that the configuration moved to the switch profile on both switches is identical; otherwise, a merge-check failure might occur.

3. Configure the switches by entering the **sync-peer destination** command.
4. Verify that the switch profiles are the same by entering the appropriate show commands.

## Verifying Commands in a Switch Profile

You can verify the commands that are included in a switch profile by entering the **verify** command in switch profile mode.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>config sync</b> <b>Example:</b>	Enters configuration synchronization mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	switch# config sync switch(config-sync)#	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>switch-profile</b> <i>name</i>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc switch(config-sync-sp)#	Configures the switch profile, names the switch profile, and enters switch profile synchronization configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>verify</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-sync-sp)# verify	Verifies the commands in the switch profile buffer.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-sync-sp)# exit switch#	Exits the switch profile configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Isolating a Peer Switch

You can isolate a peer switch in order to make changes to a switch profile. This process can be used when you want to block a configuration synchronization or when you want to debug configurations.

Isolating a peer switch requires that you remove the switch from the switch profile and then add the peer switch back to the switch profile.

To temporarily isolate a peer switch, follow these steps:

1. Remove a peer switch from a switch profile.
2. Make changes to the switch profile and commit the changes.
3. Enter debug commands.
4. Undo the changes that were made to the switch profile in Step 2 and commit.
5. Add the peer switch back to the switch profile.

## Deleting a Switch Profile

You can delete a switch profile by selecting the **all-config** or the **local-config** option:

- **all-config**—Deletes the switch profile on both peer switches (when both are reachable). If you choose this option and one of the peers is unreachable, only the local switch profile is deleted. The **all-config** option completely deletes the switch profile on both peer switches.

- **local-config**—Deletes the switch profile on the local switch only.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>config sync</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# config sync switch(config-sync)#</pre>	Enters configuration synchronization mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync)# no switch-profile abc local-config switch(config-sync-sp)#</pre>	Deletes the switch profile as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>all-config</b>—Deletes the switch profile on the local and peer switch. If the peer switch is not reachable, only the local switch profile is deleted.</li> <li>• <b>local-config</b>—Deletes the switch profile and local configuration.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp)# exit switch#</pre>	Exits configuration synchronization mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>(Optional) copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Deleting a Switch from a Switch Profile

You can delete a switch from a switch profile.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>config sync</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# config sync switch(config-sync)#</pre>	Enters configuration synchronization mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>switch-profile <i>name</i></b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc switch(config-sync-sp)#</pre>	Configures the switch profile, names the switch profile, and enters the switch profile synchronization configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>no sync-peers destination</b> <i>destination IP</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp) # no sync-peers destination 10.1.1.1 switch(config-sync-sp) #</pre>	Removes the specified switch from the switch profile.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp) # exit switch#</pre>	Exits the switch profile configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>(Optional) show switch-profile</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# show switch-profile</pre>	Displays the switch profile configuration.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>(Optional) copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Displaying the Switch Profile Buffer

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure sync</b>	Enters configuration synchronization mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config-sync) # <b>switch-profile</b> <i>profile-name</i>	Enters switch profile synchronization configuration mode for the specified switch profile.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-sync-sp) # <b>show switch-profile</b> <i>profile-name</i> <b>buffer</b>	Enters interface switch profile synchronization configuration mode for the specified interface.

### Example

The following example shows how to display the switch profile buffer for a service profile called sp:

```
switch# configure sync
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config-sync) # switch-profile sp
Switch-Profile started, Profile ID is 1
switch(config-sync-sp) # show switch-profile sp buffer
-----
Seq-no  Command
```



```
-----
1      vlan 101
1.1    ip igmp snooping querier 10.101.1.1
2      mac address-table static 0000.0000.0001 vlan 101 drop
3      interface Ethernet1/2
3.1     switchport mode trunk
3.2     switchport trunk allowed vlan 101

switch(config-sync-sp)# buffer-move 3 1
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile sp buffer
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----
1      interface Ethernet1/2
1.1     switchport mode trunk
1.2     switchport trunk allowed vlan 101
2      vlan 101
2.1     ip igmp snooping querier 10.101.1.1
3      mac address-table static 0000.0000.0001 vlan 101 drop
switch(config-sync-sp)#
```

## Synchronizing Configurations After a Switch Reboot

If a Cisco Nexus Series switch reboots while a new configuration is being committed on a peer switch using a switch profile, complete the following steps to synchronize the peer switches after reload:

### Procedure

- 
- |               |  |
|---------------|--|
| <b>Step 1</b> | Reapply configurations that were changed on the peer switch during the reboot.           |
| <b>Step 2</b> | Enter the <b>commit</b> command.   |
| <b>Step 3</b> | Verify that the configuration is applied correctly and both peers are back synchronized. |
- 

### Example

## Switch Profile Configuration show Commands

The following **show** commands display information about the switch profile.

Command	Purpose
<b>show switch-profile <i>name</i></b>	Displays the commands in a switch profile.
<b>show switch-profile <i>name</i> buffer</b>	Displays the uncommitted commands in a switch profile, the commands that were moved, and the commands that were deleted.
<b>show switch-profile <i>name</i> peer <i>IP-address</i></b>	Displays the synchronization status for a peer switch.
<b>show switch-profile <i>name</i> session-history</b>	Displays the status of the last 20 switch profile sessions.

Command	Purpose
<b>show switch-profile <i>name</i> status</b>	Displays the configuration synchronization status of a peer switch.
<b>show running-config expand-port-profile</b>	Displays details about the port profile.
<b>show running-config exclude-provision</b>	Displays the configurations for offline preprovisioned interfaces that are hidden.
<b>show running-config switch-profile</b>	Displays the running configuration for the switch profile on the local switch.
<b>show startup-config switch-profile</b>	Displays the startup configuration for the switch profile on the local switch.

For detailed information about the fields in the output from these commands, see the system management command reference for your platform.

## Configuration Examples for Switch Profiles

### Creating a Switch Profile on a Local and Peer Switch Example

The following example shows how to create a successful switch profile configuration on a local and peer switch including configuring QoS policies; a vPC peer-link, and a vPC in a switch profile.

#### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	Enable CFSolP distribution on the local and the peer switch.  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# configuration terminal switch(config)# cfs ipv4 distribute</pre>	
<b>Step 2</b>	Create a switch profile on the local and the peer switch.  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc  switch(config-sync-sp)# sync-peers destination 10.1.1.1</pre>	
<b>Step 3</b>	Verify that the switch profiles are the same on the local and the peer switch.  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile abc status  Start-time: 15801 usecs after Mon Aug</pre>	

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre> 23 06:21:08 2010 End-time:    6480 usecs after Mon Aug 23 06:21:13 2010  Profile-Revision: 1 Session-type: Initial-Exchange Peer-triggered: Yes Profile-status: Sync Success  Local information: ----- Status: Commit Success Error(s):  Peer information: ----- IP-address: 10.1.1.1 Sync-status: In Sync. Status: Commit Success Error(s): </pre>	
<b>Step 4</b>	<p>Add the configuration commands to the switch profile on the local switch. The commands will be applied to the peer switch when the commands are committed.</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre> switch(config-sync-sp)# class-map type qos c1 switch(config-sync-sp-cmap-qos)# match cos 2 switch(config-sync-sp-cmap-qos)# class-map type qos c2 switch(config-sync-sp-cmap-qos)# match cos 5 switch(config-sync-sp-cmap-qos)# policy-map type qos p1 switch(config-sync-sp-pmap-qos)# class c1 switch(config-sync-sp-pmap-c-qos)# set qos-group 2 switch(config-sync-sp-pmap-c-qos)# class c2 switch(config-sync-sp-pmap-c-qos)# set qos-group 3 switch(config-sync-sp-pmap-c-qos)# system qos switch(config-sync-sp-sys-qos)# service-policy type qos input p1 switch(config-sync-sp-sys-qos)# vlan 1-50  switch(config-sync-sp-vlan)# interface port-channel 100 switch(config-sync-sp-if)# vpc peer-link  switch(config-sync-sp-if)# switchport mode trunk switch(config-sync-sp-if)# interface port-channel 10 switch(config-sync-sp-if)# vpc 1 </pre>	

	Command or Action	Purpose																																												
	<pre>switch(config-sync-sp-if)# <b>switchport</b> <b>mode trunk</b> switch(config-sync-sp-if)# <b>switchport</b> <b>trunk allowed vlan 1, 10-50</b></pre>																																													
<b>Step 5</b>	<p>View the buffered commands.</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp-if)# <b>show</b> <b>switch-profile switch-profile buffer</b></pre> <table><tr><th>Seq-no</th><th>Command</th></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>class-map type qos match-all c1</td></tr><tr><td>1.1</td><td>match cos 2</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>class-map type qos match-all c2</td></tr><tr><td>2.1</td><td>match cos 5</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>policy-map type qos p1</td></tr><tr><td>3.1</td><td>class c1</td></tr><tr><td>3.1.1</td><td>set qos-group 2</td></tr><tr><td>3.2</td><td>class c2</td></tr><tr><td>3.2.1</td><td>set qos-group 3</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>system qos</td></tr><tr><td>4.1</td><td>service-policy type qos input</td></tr><tr><td>p1</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>5</td><td>vlan 2-50</td></tr><tr><td>6</td><td>interface port-channel100</td></tr><tr><td>6.1</td><td>vpc peer-link</td></tr><tr><td>6.2</td><td>switchport mode trunk</td></tr><tr><td>7</td><td>interface port-channel10</td></tr><tr><td>7.1</td><td>vpc 1</td></tr><tr><td>7.2</td><td>switchport mode trunk</td></tr><tr><td>7.3</td><td>switchport trunk allowed vlan</td></tr><tr><td>1, 10-50</td><td></td></tr></table>	Seq-no	Command	1	class-map type qos match-all c1	1.1	match cos 2	2	class-map type qos match-all c2	2.1	match cos 5	3	policy-map type qos p1	3.1	class c1	3.1.1	set qos-group 2	3.2	class c2	3.2.1	set qos-group 3	4	system qos	4.1	service-policy type qos input	p1		5	vlan 2-50	6	interface port-channel100	6.1	vpc peer-link	6.2	switchport mode trunk	7	interface port-channel10	7.1	vpc 1	7.2	switchport mode trunk	7.3	switchport trunk allowed vlan	1, 10-50		
Seq-no	Command																																													
1	class-map type qos match-all c1																																													
1.1	match cos 2																																													
2	class-map type qos match-all c2																																													
2.1	match cos 5																																													
3	policy-map type qos p1																																													
3.1	class c1																																													
3.1.1	set qos-group 2																																													
3.2	class c2																																													
3.2.1	set qos-group 3																																													
4	system qos																																													
4.1	service-policy type qos input																																													
p1																																														
5	vlan 2-50																																													
6	interface port-channel100																																													
6.1	vpc peer-link																																													
6.2	switchport mode trunk																																													
7	interface port-channel10																																													
7.1	vpc 1																																													
7.2	switchport mode trunk																																													
7.3	switchport trunk allowed vlan																																													
1, 10-50																																														
<b>Step 6</b>	<p>Verify the commands in the switch profile.</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp-if)# <b>verify</b> Verification Successful</pre>																																													
<b>Step 7</b>	<p>Apply the commands to the switch profile and to synchronize the configurations between the local and the peer switch.</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp)# <b>commit</b> Commit Successful switch(config-sync)#</pre>																																													

## Verifying the Synchronization Status Example

The following example shows how to verify the synchronization status between the local and the peer switch:

```
switch(config-sync)# show switch-profile switch-profile status
Start-time: 804935 usecs after Mon Aug 23 06:41:10 2010
End-time: 956631 usecs after Mon Aug 23 06:41:20 2010
```

```

Profile-Revision: 2
Session-type: Commit
Peer-triggered: No
Profile-status: Sync Success

```

```

Local information:
-----
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

```

```

Peer information:
-----
IP-address: 10.1.1.1
Sync-status: In Sync.
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

```

```
switch(config-sync)#
```

## Displaying the Running Configuration

The following example shows how to display the running configuration of the switch profile on the local switch:

```

switch# configure sync
switch(config-sync)# show running-config switch-profile
switch-profile sp
  sync-peers destination 10.1.1.1
  class-map type qos match-all c1
    match cos 2
  class-map type qos match-all c2
    match cos 5
  policy-map type qos p1
    class c1
      set qos-group 2
    class c2
      set qos-group 3
  system qos
    service-policy type qos input p1
  vlan 2-50

interface port-channel10
  switchport mode trunk
  vpc 1
  switchport trunk allowed vlan 1,10-50

interface port-channel100
  switchport mode trunk
  vpc peer-link
switch(config-sync)#

```

## Displaying the Switch Profile Synchronization Between Local and Peer Switches

This example shows how to display the synchronization status for two peer switches:

```

switch1# show switch-profile sp status

Start-time: 491815 usecs after Thu Aug 12 11:54:51 2010
End-time: 449475 usecs after Thu Aug 12 11:54:58 2010

```

```

Profile-Revision: 1
Session-type: Initial-Exchange
Peer-triggered: No
Profile-status: Sync Success

Local information:
-----
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

Peer information:
-----
IP-address: 10.193.194.52
Sync-status: In Sync.
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

switch1#

switch2# show switch-profile sp status

Start-time: 503194 usecs after Thu Aug 12 11:54:51 2010
End-time: 532989 usecs after Thu Aug 12 11:54:58 2010

Profile-Revision: 1
Session-type: Initial-Exchange
Peer-triggered: Yes
Profile-status: Sync Success

Local information:
-----
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

Peer information:
-----
IP-address: 10.193.194.51
Sync-status: In Sync.
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

switch2#

```

## Displaying Verify and Commit on Local and Peer Switches

This example shows how to configure a successful verify and commit of the local and peer switch:

```

switch1# configure sync
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch1(config-sync)# switch-profile sp
Switch-Profile started, Profile ID is 1
switch1(config-sync-sp)# interface ethernet1/1
switch1(config-sync-sp-if)# description foo
switch1(config-sync-sp-if)# verify
Verification Successful
switch1(config-sync-sp)# commit
Commit Successful
switch1(config-sync)# show running-config switch-profile
switch-profile sp
  sync-peers destination 10.193.194.52
  interface Ethernet1/1

```

```

        description foo
switch1(config-sync)# show switch-profile sp status

Start-time: 171513 usecs after Wed Aug 11 17:51:28 2010
End-time: 676451 usecs after Wed Aug 11 17:51:43 2010

Profile-Revision: 3
Session-type: Commit
Peer-triggered: No
Profile-status: Sync Success

Local information:
-----
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

Peer information:
-----
IP-address: 10.193.194.52
Sync-status: In Sync.
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

switch1(config-sync)#

switch2# show running-config switch-profile
switch-profile sp
  sync-peers destination 10.193.194.51
  interface Ethernet1/1
  description foo
switch2# show switch-profile sp status

Start-time: 265716 usecs after Wed Aug 11 16:51:28 2010
End-time: 734702 usecs after Wed Aug 11 16:51:43 2010

Profile-Revision: 3
Session-type: Commit
Peer-triggered: Yes
Profile-status: Sync Success

Local information:
-----
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

Peer information:
-----
IP-address: 10.193.194.51
Sync-status: In Sync.
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

switch2#

```

## Successful and Unsuccessful Synchronization Examples

The following example shows a successful synchronization of the switch profile on the peer switch:

```

switch# show switch-profile abc peer

switch# show switch-profile sp peer 10.193.194.52
Peer-sync-status      : In Sync.

```

```

Peer-status           : Commit Success
Peer-error(s)         :
switch1#

```

The following example shows an unsuccessful synchronization of a switch profile on the peer switch, with a peer not reachable status:

```

switch# show switch-profile sp peer 10.193.194.52
Peer-sync-status      : Not yet merged. pending-merge:1 received_merge:0
Peer-status           : Peer not reachable
Peer-error(s)         :
switch#

```

## Configuring the Switch Profile Buffer, Moving the Buffer, and Deleting the Buffer

This example shows how to configure the switch profile buffer, the buffer-move configuration, and the buffer-delete configuration:

```

switch# configure sync
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config-sync)# switch-profile sp
Switch-Profile started, Profile ID is 1
switch(config-sync-sp)# vlan 101
switch(config-sync-sp-vlan)# ip igmp snooping querier 10.101.1.1
switch(config-sync-sp-vlan)# exit
switch(config-sync-sp)# mac address-table static 0000.0000.0001 vlan 101 drop
switch(config-sync-sp)# interface ethernet1/2
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# switchport mode trunk
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 101
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# exit
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile sp buffer
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----
1       vlan 101
1.1     ip igmp snooping querier 10.101.1.1
2       mac address-table static 0000.0000.0001 vlan 101 drop
3       interface Ethernet1/2
3.1     switchport mode trunk
3.2     switchport trunk allowed vlan 101

switch(config-sync-sp)# buffer-move 3 1
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile sp buffer
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----
1       interface Ethernet1/2
1.1     switchport mode trunk
1.2     switchport trunk allowed vlan 101
2       vlan 101
2.1     ip igmp snooping querier 10.101.1.1
3       mac address-table static 0000.0000.0001 vlan 101 drop

switch(config-sync-sp)# buffer-delete 1
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile sp buffer
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----
2       vlan 101
2.1     ip igmp snooping querier 10.101.1.1

```



```

3      mac address-table static 0000.0000.0001 vlan 101 drop

switch(config-sync-sp) # buffer-delete all
switch(config-sync-sp) # show switch-profile sp buffer
switch(config-sync-sp) #

```

## Sample Migrations Using the Import Command

### Migrating Cisco NX-OS Release 5.0(2)N1(1) in a Fabric Extender A-A Topology Example

This examples shows the tasks used to migrate to Cisco NX-OS Release 5.0(2)N1(1) in a Fabric Extender A-A topology. For details on the tasks, see the appropriate sections in this chapter.

#### Procedure

- 
- |               |   |
|---------------|---|
| <b>Step 1</b> | Ensure configurations are the same on both switches.  |
| <b>Step 2</b> | Configure the switch-profile with same name on both switches.   |
| <b>Step 3</b> | Enter the <b>import running config</b> command on both switches.  |
| <b>Step 4</b> | Enter the <b>switch-profile name buffer</b> command to ensure all configurations are correctly imported on both switches.   |
| <b>Step 5</b> | Remove unwanted configuration settings by editing the buffer.<br><br>For details, see <a href="#">Configuring the Switch Profile Buffer, Moving the Buffer, and Deleting the Buffer, on page 30</a> . |
| <b>Step 6</b> | Enter the <b>commit</b> command on both switches.   |
| <b>Step 7</b> | Enter the <b>sync-peers destination IP-address</b> command to configure the peer switch on both switches.   |
| <b>Step 8</b> | Enter the <b>switch-profile name status</b> command to ensure both switches are synchronized.   |
- 

### Migrating Cisco NX-OS Release 5.0(2)N1(1) in a Fabric Extender Fabric Extender Straight-Through Topology Example

This example shows the tasks used to migrate to Cisco NX-OS Release 5.0(2)N1(1) in a Fabric Extender Straight-Through topology. For details on the tasks, see the appropriate sections in this chapter.

#### Procedure

- 
- |               |  |
|---------------|--|
| <b>Step 1</b> | Ensure the vPC port-channel configurations are the same on both switches.  |
| <b>Step 2</b> | Configure the switch-profile with the same name on both switches.  |
| <b>Step 3</b> | Enter the <b>import interface port-channel x-y, port-channel z</b> command for all vPC port-channels on both switches.         |
| <b>Step 4</b> | Enter the <b>show switch-profile name buffer</b> command to ensure all configurations are correctly imported on both switches. |
| <b>Step 5</b> | Remove unwanted configuration settings by editing the buffer.  |

For details, see [Configuring the Switch Profile Buffer, Moving the Buffer, and Deleting the Buffer](#), on page 30.

- Step 6** Enter the **commit** command on both switches.
- Step 7** Enter the **sync-peers destination IP-address** command to configure the peer switch on both switches.
- Step 8** Enter the **show switch-profile name status** command to ensure both switches are synchronized.
- 

## Replacing a Cisco Nexus 5000 Series Switch

When a Cisco Nexus 5000 Series switch has been replaced, perform the following configuration steps on the replacement switch to synchronize it with the existing Cisco Nexus 5000 Series switch. The procedure can be done in a hybrid Fabric Extender A/A topology and Fabric Extender Straight-Through topology.

1. Do not connect any peer-link, vPC, A/A or Straight-Through topology fabric ports to the replacement switch.
2. Boot the replacement switch. The switch comes up with no configuration.
3. Enable pre-provisioning on all Fabric Extender A/A and ST modules.
4. Configure the replacement switch:  
If the running-configuration was saved offline, follow steps 5-9 to apply the configuration.  
If the running-configuration was not saved offline, you can obtain it from the peer switch if the configuration synchronization feature is enabled. (See Steps 1 and 2 from "Creating a Switch Profile on a Local and Peer Switch" then begin with step 10 below).  
If neither condition is met, manually add the configuration and then begin with step 10 below.
5. Edit the configuration file to remove the **sync-peer** command if using the configuration synchronization feature.
6. Configure the mgmt port IP address and download the configuration file.
7. Copy the saved configuration file to the running configuration.
8. Verify the configuration is correct by entering the **show running-config** command and the **show provision failed-config slot** command.
9. If switch-profile configuration changes were made on the peer switch while the replacement switch was out-of-service, apply those configurations in the switch-profile and then enter the commit command.
10. Shutdown all Fabric Extender ST topology ports that are included in a vPC topology.
11. Connect the Fabric Extender ST topology fabric ports.
12. Wait for Fabric Extender ST topology switches to come online.
13. Ensure the vPC role priority of the existing switch is better than the replacement switch.
14. Connect the peer-link ports to the peer switch.
15. Connect the Fabric Extender A/A topology fabric ports.
16. Connect the switch vPC ports.

17. Enter the **no shutdown** command on all Fabric Extender ST vPC ports.
18. Verify that all vPC switches and the Fabric Extenders on the replacement switch come online and that there is no disruption in traffic.
19. If you are using the configuration synchronization feature, add the sync-peer configuration to the switch-profile if this wasn't enabled in Step 4.
20. If you are using the configuration synchronization feature, enter the **show switch-profile *name* status** command to ensure both switches are synchronized.





## CHAPTER 4

# Configuring Module Pre-Provisioning

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About Module Pre-Provisioning, on page 35](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations, on page 35](#)
- [Enabling Module Pre-Provisioning, on page 36](#)
- [Removing Module Pre-Provisioning, on page 37](#)
- [Verifying the Pre-Provisioned Configuration, on page 37](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Pre-Provisioning, on page 38](#)

## Information About Module Pre-Provisioning

The pre-provisioning feature allows you to preconfigure interfaces before inserting or attaching a module. If a module goes offline, you can also use pre-provisioning to make changes to the interface configurations for the offline module. When a pre-provisioned module comes online, the pre-provisioning configurations are applied. If any configurations were not applied, a syslog is generated. The syslog lists the configurations that were not accepted.

In some Virtual Port Channel (vPC) topologies, pre-provisioning is required for the configuration synchronization feature. Pre-provisioning allows you to synchronize the configuration for an interface that is online with one peer but offline with another peer.

## Guidelines and Limitations

Pre-provisioning has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- When a module comes online, commands that are not applied are listed in the syslog.
- If a slot is pre-provisioned for module A and if you insert module B into the slot, module B does not come online.
- There is no MIB support for pre-provisioned interfaces.
- Cisco DCNM is not supported.

# Enabling Module Pre-Provisioning

You can enable pre-provisioning on a module that is offline. Enter the **provision model** *model* command in module pre-provision mode.



## Note

After enabling pre-provisioning, you can configure the interfaces as though they are online.

## Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configuration terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch# config t switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>slot slot</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config)# slot 101 switch(config-slot)#	Selects the slot to pre-provision and enters slot configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>provision model model</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-slot)# provision model N2K-C2248T switch(config-slot)#	Selects the module that you want to pre-provision.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-slot)# exit switch#	Exits slot configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Example

This example shows how to select slot 101 and the N2K-C2232P module to pre-provision.

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# slot 101
switch(config-slot)# provision model N2K-C2232P
switch(config-slot)# exit
```

# Removing Module Pre-Provisioning

You can remove a module that has been pre-provisioned.

## Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configuration terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch# config t switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>slot slot</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config)# slot 101 switch(config-slot)#	Selects the slot to pre-provision and enters slot configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>no provision model model</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-slot)# no provision model N2K-C2248T switch(config-slot)#	Removes pre-provisioning from the module.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config-slot)# exit switch#	Exits slot configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>(Optional) copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Example

This example shows how to remove a preprovisioned module from a chassis slot:

```
switch(config)# slot 2
switch(config-slot)# no provision model N5K-M1404
switch(config-slot)#
```

# Verifying the Pre-Provisioned Configuration

To display the pre-provisioned configuration, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
show module	Displays module information.
show switch-profile	Displays switch profile information.
show running-config exclude-provision	Displays the running configuration without the pre-provisioned interfaces or modules that are offline.
show provision failed-config	Displays the pre-provisioned commands that were not applied to the configuration when the interface or module came online.  This command also displays a history of failed commands.
show running-config	Displays the running configuration including the pre-provisioned configuration.
show startup-config	Displays the startup configuration including the pre-provisioned configuration.

## Configuration Examples for Pre-Provisioning

The following example shows how to enable pre-provisioning on slot 110 on the Cisco Nexus 2232P Fabric Extender and how to pre-provision interface configuration commands on the Ethernet 110/1/1 interface.

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# slot 110
switch(config-slot)# provision model N2K-C2232P
switch(config-slot)# exit

switch# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# interface Ethernet110/1/1
switch(config-if)# description module is preprovisioned
switch(config-if)# show running-config interface Ethernet110/1/1
Time: Wed Aug 25 21:29:44 2010

version 5.0(2)N1(1)

interface Ethernet110/1/1
    description module is preprovisioned
```

The following example shows the list of pre-provisioned commands that were not applied when the module came online.

```
switch(config-if-range)# show provision failed-config 101
The following config was not applied for slot 33
=====

interface Ethernet101/1/1
    service-policy input test

interface Ethernet101/1/2
    service-policy input test

interface Ethernet101/1/3
    service-policy input test
```



This example shows how to remove all pre-provisioned modules from a slot:

```
switch(config)# slot 2
switch(config-slot)# no provision model
switch(config-slot)#
```





## CHAPTER 5

# Using Cisco Fabric Services

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About CFS, on page 41](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for CFS, on page 42](#)
- [CFS Distribution, on page 43](#)
- [CFS Support for Applications, on page 44](#)
- [CFS Regions, on page 48](#)
- [Configuring CFS over IP, on page 51](#)
- [Default Settings for CFS, on page 53](#)

## Information About CFS

Some features in the Cisco Nexus Series switch require configuration synchronization with other switches in the network to function correctly. Synchronization through manual configuration at each switch in the network can be a tedious and error-prone process.

Cisco Fabric Services (CFS) provides a common infrastructure for automatic configuration synchronization in the network. It provides the transport function and a set of common services to the features. CFS has the ability to discover CFS-capable switches in the network and to discover feature capabilities in all CFS-capable switches.

Cisco Nexus Series switches support CFS message distribution over Fibre Channel and IPv4 or IPv6 networks. If the switch is provisioned with Fibre Channel ports, CFS over Fibre Channel is enabled by default while CFS over IP must be explicitly enabled.

CFS provides the following features:

- Peer-to-peer protocol with no client-server relationship at the CFS layer.
- CFS message distribution over Fibre Channel and IPv4 or IPv6 networks.
- Three modes of distribution.
  - Coordinated distributions—Only one distribution is allowed in the network at any given time.
  - Uncoordinated distributions—Multiple parallel distributions are allowed in the network except when a coordinated distribution is in progress.

- Unrestricted uncoordinated distributions—Multiple parallel distributions are allowed in the network in the presence of an existing coordinated distribution. Unrestricted uncoordinated distributions are allowed to run in parallel with all other types of distributions.

The following features are supported for CFS distribution over IP:

- One scope of distribution over an IP network:
  - Physical scope—The distribution spans the entire IP network.

The following features are supported for CFS distribution over Fibre Channel SANs:

- Three scopes of distribution over SAN fabrics.
  - Logical scope — The distribution occurs within the scope of a VSAN.
  - Physical scope — The distribution spans the entire physical topology.
  - Over a selected set of VSANs — Some features require configuration distribution over some specific VSANs. These features can specify to CFS the set of VSANs over which to restrict the distribution.
- Supports a merge protocol that facilitates the merge of feature configuration during a fabric merge event (when two independent SAN fabrics merge).

## Cisco Fabric Services over Ethernet

The Cisco Fabric Services over Ethernet (CFSoE) is a reliable state transport mechanism that you can use to synchronize the actions of the vPC peer devices. CFSoE carries messages and packets for many features linked with vPC, such as STP and IGMP. Information is carried in CFS/CFSoE protocol data units (PDUs).

When you enable the vPC feature, the device automatically enables CFSoE, and you do not have to configure anything. CFSoE distributions for vPCs do not need the capabilities to distribute over IP or the CFS regions. You do not need to configure anything for the CFSoE feature to work correctly on vPCs.

You can use the `show mac address-table` command to display the MAC addresses that CFSoE synchronizes for the vPC peer link.



---

**Note** Do not enter the **no cfs eth distribute** or the **no cfs distribute** command. CFSoE must be enabled for vPC functionality. If you do enter either of these commands when vPC is enabled, the system displays an error message.

---

When you enter the **show cfs application** command, the output displays "Physical-eth," which shows the applications that are using CFSoE.

## Guidelines and Limitations for CFS

CFS has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- If the virtual port channel (vPC) feature is enabled for your device, do not disable CFSoE.



---

**Note** CFSoE must be enabled for the vPC feature to work.

---

- All CFSoIP-enabled devices with similar multicast addresses form one CFSoIP fabric.
- Make sure that CFS is enabled for the applications that you want to configure.
- Anytime you lock a fabric, your username is remembered across restarts and switchovers.
- Anytime you lock a fabric, configuration changes attempted by anyone else are rejected.
- While a fabric is locked, the application holds a working copy of configuration changes in a pending database or temporary storage area, not in the running configuration.
- Configuration changes that have not been committed yet (still saved as a working copy) are not in the running configuration and do not display in the output of **show** commands.
- If you start a CFS session that requires a fabric lock but forget to end the session, an administrator can clear the session.
- An empty commit is allowed if configuration changes are not previously made. In this case, the **commit** command results in a session that acquires locks and distributes the current database.
- You can use the **commit** command only on the specific device where the fabric lock was acquired.
- CFSoIP and CFSoE are not supported for use together.
- CFS regions can be applied only to CFSoIP applications.

## CFS Distribution

The CFS distribution functionality is independent of the lower layer transport. Cisco Nexus Series switches support CFS distribution over IP and over Fibre Channel. Features that use CFS are unaware of the lower layer transport.

## CFS Distribution Modes

CFS supports three distribution modes to accommodate different feature requirements:

- Uncoordinated Distribution
- Coordinated Distribution
- Unrestricted Uncoordinated Distributions

Only one mode is allowed at any given time.

## Uncoordinated Distribution

Uncoordinated distributions are used to distribute information that is not expected to conflict with information from a peer. Parallel uncoordinated distributions are allowed for a feature.

## Coordinated Distribution

Coordinated distributions allow only one feature distribution at a given time. CFS uses locks to enforce this feature. A coordinated distribution is not allowed to start if locks are taken for the feature anywhere in the network. A coordinated distribution consists of three stages:

- A network lock is acquired.
- The configuration is distributed and committed.
- The network lock is released.

Coordinated distribution has two variants:

- CFS driven—The stages are executed by CFS in response to a feature request without intervention from the feature.
- Feature driven—The stages are under the complete control of the feature.

Coordinated distributions are used to distribute information that can be manipulated and distributed from multiple switches, for example, the port security configuration.

## Unrestricted Uncoordinated Distributions

Unrestricted uncoordinated distributions allow multiple parallel distributions in the network in the presence of an existing coordinated distribution. Unrestricted uncoordinated distributions are allowed to run in parallel with all other types of distributions.

## Verifying the CFS Distribution Status

The **show cfs status** command displays the status of CFS distribution on the switch:

```
switch# show cfs status
Distribution : Enabled
Distribution over IP : Enabled - mode IPv4
IPv4 multicast address : 239.255.70.83
IPv6 multicast address : ff15::efff:4653
Distribution over Ethernet : Enabled
```

## CFS Support for Applications

### CFS Application Requirements

All switches in the network must be CFS capable. Switches that are not CFS capable do not receive distributions, which results in part of the network not receiving the intended distribution. CFS has the following requirements:

- Implicit CFS usage—The first time that you issue a CFS task for a CFS-enabled application, the configuration modification process begins and the application locks the network.
- Pending database—The pending database is a temporary buffer to hold uncommitted information. The uncommitted changes are not applied immediately to ensure that the database is synchronized with the database in the other switches in the network. When you commit the changes, the pending database overwrites the configuration database (also known as the active database or the effective database).

- CFS distribution enabled or disabled on a per-application basis—The default (enable or disable) for the CFS distribution state differs between applications. If CFS distribution is disabled for an application, that application does not distribute any configuration and does not accept a distribution from other switches in the network.
- Explicit CFS commit—Most applications require an explicit commit operation to copy the changes in the temporary buffer to the application database, to distribute the new database to the network, and to release the network lock. The changes in the temporary buffer are not applied if you do not perform the commit operation.

## Enabling CFS for an Application

All CFS-based applications provide an option to enable or disable the distribution capabilities.

Applications have the distribution enabled by default.

The application configuration is not distributed by CFS unless distribution is explicitly enabled for that application.

## Verifying Application Registration Status

The **show cfs application** command displays the applications that are currently registered with CFS. The first column displays the application name. The second column indicates whether the application is enabled or disabled for distribution (enabled or disabled). The last column indicates the scope of distribution for the application (logical, physical, or both).



### Note

The **show cfs application** command only displays applications registered with CFS. Conditional services that use CFS do not appear in the output unless these services are running.

```
switch# show cfs application
```

```
-----
Application      Enabled      Scope
-----
ntp              No          Physical-all
fscm             Yes         Physical-fc
rscn             No          Logical
fctimer          No          Physical-fc
syslogd          No          Physical-all
callhome         No          Physical-all
fcdomain         Yes         Logical
device-alias     Yes         Physical-fc
Total number of entries = 8
```

The **show cfs application name** command displays the details for a particular application. It displays the enabled/disabled state, timeout as registered with CFS, merge capability (if it has registered with CFS for merge support), and the distribution scope.

```
switch# show cfs application name fscm
```

```
Enabled          : Yes
Timeout          : 100s
Merge Capable    : No
Scope            : Physical-fc
```

## Locking the Network

When you configure (first-time configuration) a feature (application) that uses the CFS infrastructure, that feature starts a CFS session and locks the network. When a network is locked, the switch software allows configuration changes to this feature only from the switch that holds the lock. If you make configuration changes to the feature from another switch, the switch issues a message to inform the user about the locked status. The configuration changes are held in a pending database by that application.

If you start a CFS session that requires a network lock but forget to end the session, an administrator can clear the session. If you lock a network at any time, your username is remembered across restarts and switchovers. If another user (on the same machine) tries to perform configuration tasks, that user's attempts are rejected.

## Verifying CFS Lock Status

The **show cfs lock** command displays all the locks that are currently acquired by any application. For each application the command displays the application name and scope of the lock taken. If the application lock is taken in the physical scope, then this command displays the switch WWN, IP address, user name, and user type of the lock holder. If the application is taken in the logical scope, then this command displays the VSAN in which the lock is taken, the domain, IP address, user name, and user type of the lock holder.

```
switch# show cfs lock
```

```
Application: ntp
Scope      : Physical
```

Switch WWN	IP Address	User Name	User Type
20:00:00:05:30:00:6b:9e	10.76.100.167	admin	CLI/SNMP v3

Total number of entries = 1

```
Application: port-security
Scope      : Logical
```

VSAN	Domain	IP Address	User Name	User Type
1	238	10.76.100.167	admin	CLI/SNMP v3
2	211	10.76.100.167	admin	CLI/SNMP v3

Total number of entries = 2

The **show cfs lock name** command displays the lock details for the specified application.

```
switch# show cfs lock name ntp
```

```
Scope      : Physical
```



```

-----
Switch WWN                IP Address      User Name      User Type
-----
20:00:00:05:30:00:6b:9e  10.76.100.167  admin          CLI/SNMP v3

Total number of entries = 1

```

## Committing Changes

A commit operation saves the pending database for all application peers and releases the lock for all switches.

The commit function does not start a session; only a lock function starts a session. However, an empty commit is allowed if configuration changes are not previously made. In this case, a commit operation results in a session that acquires locks and distributes the current database.

When you commit configuration changes to a feature using the CFS infrastructure, you receive a notification about one of the following responses:

- One or more external switches report a successful status—The application applies the changes locally and releases the network lock.
- None of the external switches report a successful state—The application considers this state a failure and does not apply the changes to any switch in the network. The network lock is not released.

You can commit changes for a specified feature by entering the **commit** command for that feature.

## Discarding Changes

If you discard configuration changes, the application flushes the pending database and releases locks in the network. Both the abort and commit functions are supported only from the switch from which the network lock is acquired.

You can discard changes for a specified feature by using the **abort** command for that feature.

## Saving the Configuration

Configuration changes that have not been applied yet (still in the pending database) are not shown in the running configuration. The configuration changes in the pending database overwrite the configuration in the effective database when you commit the changes.



### Caution

If you do not commit the changes, they are not saved to the running configuration.

## Clearing a Locked Session

You can clear a lock held by an application from any device in the fabric.



### Caution

When you clear a lock in the fabric, any pending configurations in any device in the fabric are discarded.

**Before you begin**

You must have administrator permissions to release a lock.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show application-name status</b>	Shows the current application state.
<b>Step 2</b>	Required: switch# <b>clear application-name session</b>	Clears the application configuration session and releases the lock on the fabric. All pending changes are discarded.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show application-name status</b>	Shows the current application state.

**Example**

```
switch# show ntp status
Distribution : Enabled
Last operational state: Fabric Locked
switch# clear ntp session
switch# show ntp status
Distribution : Enabled
Last operational state: No session
```

# CFS Regions

## About CFS Regions

A CFS region is a user-defined subset of switches for a given feature or application in its physical distribution scope. When a network spans a vast geography, you might need to localize or restrict the distribution of certain profiles among a set of switches based on their physical proximity. CFS regions allow you to create multiple islands of distribution within the network for a given CFS feature or application. CFS regions are designed to restrict the distribution of a feature's configuration to a specific set or grouping of switches in a network.

**Note**

You can only configure a CFS region based on physical switches. You cannot configure a CFS region in a VSAN.

## Example Scenario

The Smart Call Home application triggers alerts to network administrators when a situation arises or something abnormal occurs. When the network covers many geographies, and there are multiple network administrators who are each responsible for a subset of switches in the network, the Smart Call Home application sends alerts to all network administrators regardless of their location. For the Smart Call Home application to send message

alerts selectively to network administrators, the physical scope of the application has to be fine tuned or narrowed down. You can achieve this scenario by implementing CFS regions.

CFS regions are identified by numbers ranging from 0 through 200. Region 0 is reserved as the default region and contains every switch in the network. You can configure regions from 1 through 200. The default region maintains backward compatibility.

If the feature is moved, that is, assigned to a new region, its scope is restricted to that region; it ignores all other regions for distribution or merging purposes. The assignment of the region to a feature has precedence in distribution over its initial physical scope.

You can configure a CFS region to distribute configurations for multiple features. However, on a given switch, you can configure only one CFS region at a time to distribute the configuration for a given feature. Once you assign a feature to a CFS region, its configuration cannot be distributed within another CFS region.

## Managing CFS Regions

### Creating CFS Regions

You can create a CFS region.

#### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>cfs region</b> <i>region-id</i>	Creates a region.

### Assigning Applications to CFS Regions

You can assign an application on a switch to a region.

#### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure</b> terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>cfs region</b> <i>region-id</i>	Creates a region.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-cfs-region)# <i>application</i>	<p>Adds application(s) to the region.</p> <p><b>Note</b> You can add any number of applications on the switch to a region. If you try adding an application to the same region more than once, you see the "Application already present in the same region" error message.</p>

**Example**

The following example shows how to assign applications to a region:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# cfs region 1
switch(config-cfs-region)# ntp
switch(config-cfs-region)# callhome
```

**Moving an Application to a Different CFS Region**

You can move an application from one region to another region.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>cfs region</b> <i>region-id</i>	Enters CFS region configuration submenu.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-cfs-region)# <i>application</i>	Indicates application(s) to be moved from one region into another.  <b>Note</b> If you try moving an application to the same region more than once, you see the "Application already present in the same region" error message.

**Example**

The following example shows how to move an application into Region 2 that was originally assigned to Region 1:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# cfs region 2
switch(config-cfs-region)# ntp
```

**Removing an Application from a Region**

Removing an application from a region is the same as moving the application back to the default region (Region 0), which brings the entire network into the scope of distribution for the application.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>cfs region</b> <i>region-id</i>	Enters CFS region configuration submode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-cfs-region)# <b>no application</b>	Removes application(s) that belong to the region.

## Deleting CFS Regions

Deleting a region nullifies the region definition. All the applications bound by the region are released back to the default region.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>no cfs region</b> <i>region-id</i>	Deletes the region.  <b>Note</b> You see the, "All the applications in the region will be moved to the default region" warning.

# Configuring CFS over IP

## Enabling CFS over IPv4

You can enable or disable CFS over IPv4.



**Note** CFS cannot distribute over both IPv4 and IPv6 from the same switch.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>cfs ipv4 distribute</b>	Globally enables CFS over IPv4 for all applications on the switch.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>no cfs ipv4 distribute</b>	Disables (default) CFS over IPv4 on the switch.

## Enabling CFS over IPv6

You can enable or disable CFS over IPv6.



### Note

CFS cannot distribute over both IPv4 and IPv6 from the same switch.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure</b>	Enters configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>cfs ipv6 distribute</b>	Globally enables CFS over IPv6 for all applications on the switch.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>no cfs ipv6 distribute</b>	Disables (default) CFS over IPv6 on the switch.

## Verifying the CFS Over IP Configuration

The following example show how to verify the CFS over IP configuration:

```
switch# show cfs status
Distribution : Enabled
Distribution over IP : Enabled - mode IPv4
IPv4 multicast address : 239.255.70.83
IPv6 multicast address : ff15::efff:4653
```

## Configuring IP Multicast Addresses for CFS over IP

All CFS over IP enabled switches with similar multicast addresses form one CFS over IP network. CFS protocol-specific distributions, such as the keepalive mechanism for detecting network topology changes, use the IP multicast address to send and receive information.



### Note

CFS distributions for application data use directed unicast.

## Configuring IPv4 Multicast Address for CFS

You can configure a CFS over IP multicast address value for IPv4. The default IPv4 multicast address is 239.255.70.83.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>cfs ipv4 mcast-address</b> <i>ipv4-address</i>	Configures the IPv4 multicast address for CFS distribution over IPv4. The ranges of valid IPv4 addresses are 239.255.0.0 through 239.255.255.255 and 239.192/16 through 239.251/16.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>no cfs ipv4 mcast-address</b> <i>ipv4-address</i>	Reverts to the default IPv4 multicast address for CFS distribution over IPv4. The default IPv4 multicast address for CFS is 239.255.70.83.

## Configuring IPv6 Multicast Address for CFS

You can configure a CFS over IP multicast address value for IPv6. The default IPv6 multicast address is ff13:7743:4653.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure</b>	Enters configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>cfs ipv6 mcast-address</b> <i>ipv4-address</i>	Configures the IPv6 multicast address for CFS distribution over IPv6. The range of valid IPv6 addresses is ff15::/16 (ff15::0000:0000 through ff15::ffff:ffff) and ff18::/16 (ff18::0000:0000 through ff18::ffff:ffff).
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>no cfs ipv6 mcast-address</b> <i>ipv4-address</i>	Reverts to the default IPv6 multicast address for CFS distribution over IPv6. The default IPv6 multicast address for CFS over IP is ff15::efff:4653.

## Verifying the IP Multicast Address Configuration for CFS over IP

The following example shows how to verify the IP multicast address configuration for CFS over IP:

```
switch# show cfs status
Fabric distribution Enabled
IP distribution Enabled mode ipv4
IPv4 multicast address : 10.1.10.100
IPv6 multicast address : ff13::e244:4754
```

## Default Settings for CFS

The following table lists the default settings for CFS configurations.

Table 1: Default CFS Parameters

Parameters	Default
CFS distribution on the switch	Enabled
Database changes	Implicitly enabled with the first configuration change
Application distribution	Differs based on application
Commit	Explicit configuration is required
CFS over IP	Disabled
IPv4 multicast address	239.255.70.83
IPv6 multicast address	ff15::eff:4653

The CISCO-CFS-MIB contains SNMP configuration information for any CFS-related functions. See the MIB reference for your platform.

## Enabling CFS to Distribute Smart Call Home Configurations

You can enable CFS to distribute Call Home configurations to all Cisco NX-OS devices in the network. The entire Call Home configuration is distributed except the device priority and the sysContact names.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>callhome</b>	Enters Call Home configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-callhome)# <b>distribute</b>	Enables CFS to distribute Smart Call Home configuration updates.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config-callhome)# <b>show application-name status</b>	For the specified application, displays the CFS distribution status.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config-callhome)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome)# distribute
switch(config-callhome)# show callhome status
Distribution : Enabled
switch(config-callhome)# copy running-config startup-config
```



## Enabling CFS to Distribute Device Alias Configurations

You can enable CFS to distribute device alias configurations in order to consistently administer and maintain the device alias database across all Cisco NX-OS devices in the fabric.

### Before you begin

Make sure that you are in the storage VDC. To change to the storage VDC, use the **switchto vdc fcoe** command.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>device-alias distribute</b>	Enables CFS to distribute device alias configuration updates.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show cfs application</b>	Displays the CFS distribution status.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to enable CFS to distribute device alias configurations:

```
switch(config)# device-alias distribute
switch(config)# show cfs application
-----
Application Enabled Scope
-----
device-alias Yes Physical-fc
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
```

## Enabling CFS to Distribute DPVM Configurations

You can enable CFS to distribute dynamic port VSAN membership (DPVM) configurations in order to consistently administer and maintain the DPVM database across all Cisco NX-OS devices in the fabric.

### Before you begin

Make sure that you are in the storage VDC. To change to the storage VDC, use the **switchto vdc fcoe** command.

Make sure that you enable the DPVM feature. To do so, use the **feature dpvm** command.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>dpvm distribute</b>	Enables CFS to distribute DPVM configuration updates.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show application-name status</b>	For the specified application, displays the CFS distribution status.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

**Example**

This example shows how to enable CFS to distribute DPVM configurations:

```
switch(config)# dpvm distribute
switch(config)# show dpvm status
Distribution is enabled.
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
```

## Enabling CFS to Distribute FC Domain Configurations

You can enable CFS to distribute Fibre Channel (FC) domain configurations in order to synchronize the configuration across the fabric from the console of a single Cisco NX-OS device and to ensure consistency in the allowed domain ID lists on all devices in the VSAN.

**Before you begin**

Make sure that you are in the storage VDC. To change to the storage VDC, use the **switchto vdc fcoe** command.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>fcdomain distribute</b>	Enables CFS to distribute FC domain configuration updates.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show application-name status</b>	For the specified application, displays the CFS distribution status.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to enable CFS to distribute FC domain configurations:

```
switch(config)# fcdomain distribute
switch(config)# show fcdomain status
fcdomain distribution is enabled
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
```

## Enabling CFS to Distribute FC Port Security Configurations

You can enable CFS to distribute Fibre Channel (FC) port security configurations in order to provide a single point of configuration for the entire fabric in the VSAN and to enforce the port security policies throughout the fabric.

### Before you begin

Make sure that you are in the storage VDC. To change to the storage VDC, use the **switchto vdc fcoe** command.

Make sure that you enable the FC port security feature. To do so, use the **feature fc-port-security** command.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>fc-port-security distribute</b>	Enables CFS to distribute FC port security configuration updates.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show cfs application</b>	Displays the CFS distribution status.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to enable CFS to distribute FC port security configurations:

```
switch(config)# fc-port-security distribute
switch(config)# show cfs application
-----
Application Enabled Scope
-----
fc-port-securi Yes Logical
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
```

## Enabling CFS to Distribute FC Timer Configurations

You can enable CFS to distribute Fibre Channel (FC) timer configurations for all Cisco NX-OS devices in the fabric.

### Before you begin

Make sure that you are in the storage VDC. To change to the storage VDC, use the **switchto vdc fcoe** command.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>ftimer distribute</b>	Enables CFS to distribute FC timer configuration updates.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show application-name status</b>	For the specified application, displays the CFS distribution status.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to enable CFS to distribute FC timer configurations:

```
switch(config)# ftimer distribute
switch(config)# show ftimer status
Distribution : Enabled
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
```

## Enabling CFS to Distribute IVR Configurations

You can enable CFS to distribute inter-VSAN routing (IVR) configurations in order to enable efficient IVR configuration management and to provide a single point of configuration for the entire fabric in the VSAN.

### Before you begin

Make sure that you are in the storage VDC. To change to the storage VDC, use the **switchto vdc fcoe** command.

Make sure that you install the Advanced SAN Services license.

Make sure that you enable the IVR feature. To do so, use the **feature ivr** command.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>ivr distribute</b>	Enables CFS to distribute IVR configuration updates.  <b>Note</b> You must enable IVR distribution on all IVR-enabled switches in the fabric.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show cfs application</b>	Displays the CFS distribution status.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

**Example**

This example shows how to enable CFS to distribute IVR configurations:

```
switch(config)# ivr distribute
switch(config)# show cfs application
-----
Application Enabled Scope
-----
ivr Yes Physical-fc
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
```

## Enabling CFS to Distribute NTP Configurations

You can enable CFS to distribute NTP configurations to all Cisco NX-OS devices in the network.

**Before you begin**

Make sure that you enable the NTP feature (using the **feature ntp** command).

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>ntp distribute</b>	Enables CFS to distribute NTP configuration updates.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show application-name status</b>	For the specified application, displays the CFS distribution status.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

**Example**

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ntp distribute
switch(config)# show ntp status
Distribution : Enabled
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Enabling CFS to Distribute RADIUS Configurations

You can enable CFS to distribute RADIUS configurations to all Cisco NX-OS devices in the network.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>radius distribute</b>	Enables CFS to distribute RADIUS configuration updates.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show application-name status</b>	For the specified application, displays the CFS distribution status.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

**Example**

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# radius distribute
switch(config)# show radius status
Distribution : Enabled
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Enabling CFS to Distribute RSCN Configurations

You can enable CFS to distribute registered state change notification (RSCN) configurations to all Cisco NX-OS devices in the fabric.

**Before you begin**

Make sure that you are in the storage VDC. To change to the storage VDC, use the **switchto vdc fcoe** command.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>rscn distribute</b>	Enables CFS to distribute RSCN configuration updates.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show cfs application</b>	Displays the CFS distribution status.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

**Example**

This example shows how to enable CFS to distribute RSCN configurations:

```
switch(config)# rscn distribute
switch(config)# show cfs application
-----
Application Enabled Scope
-----
rscn Yes Logical
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
```

## Enabling CFS to Distribute TACACS+ Configurations

You can enable CFS to distribute TACACS+ configurations to all Cisco NX-OS devices in the network.

**Before you begin**

Make sure that you enable the TACACS+ feature (using the **feature tacacs+** command).

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>tacacs+ distribute</b>	Enables CFS to distribute TACACS+ configuration updates.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show application-name status</b>	For the specified application, displays the CFS distribution status.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# tacacs+ distribute
switch(config)# show tacacs+ status
Distribution : Enabled
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```





## CHAPTER 6

# Configuring PTP

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About PTP, on page 63](#)
- [PTP Device Types, on page 64](#)
- [PTP Process, on page 65](#)
- [Clock Management, on page 65](#)
- [High Availability for PTP, on page 66](#)
- [Licensing Requirements for PTP, on page 66](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for PTP, on page 66](#)
- [Default Settings for PTP, on page 66](#)
- [Configuring PTP, on page 67](#)

## Information About PTP

PTP is a time synchronization protocol for nodes distributed across a network. Its hardware timestamp feature provides greater accuracy than other time synchronization protocols such as the Network Time Protocol (NTP).

A PTP system can consist of a combination of PTP and non-PTP devices. PTP devices include ordinary clocks, boundary clocks, and transparent clocks. Non-PTP devices include ordinary network switches, routers, and other infrastructure devices.

PTP is a distributed protocol that specifies how real-time PTP clocks in the system synchronize with each other. These clocks are organized into a master-slave synchronization hierarchy with the grandmaster clock, which is the clock at the top of the hierarchy, determining the reference time for the entire system. Synchronization is achieved by exchanging PTP timing messages, with the members using the timing information to adjust their clocks to the time of their master in the hierarchy. PTP operates within a logical scope called a PTP domain.

Starting from Cisco NXOS Release 6.0(2)A8(3), PTP supports configuring multiple PTP clocking domains, PTP grandmaster capability, PTP cost on interfaces for slave and passive election, and clock identity.

All the switches in a multi-domain environment, belong to one domain. The switches that are the part of boundary clock, must have multi-domain feature enabled on them. Each domain has user configurable parameters such as domain priority, clock class threshold and clock accuracy threshold. The clocks in each domain remain synchronized with the master clock in that domain. If the GPS in a domain fails, the master clock in the domain synchronizes time and data sets associated with the announce messages from the master clock in the domain where the GPS is active. If the master clock from the highest priority domain does not meet the clock quality attributes, a clock in the subsequent domain that match the criteria is selected. The Best

Master Clock Algorithm (BMCA) is used to select the master clock if none of the domains has the desired clock quality attributes. If all the domains have equal priority and the threshold values less than master clock attributes or if the threshold values are greater than the master clock attributes, BMCA is used to select the master clock.

Grandmaster capability feature controls the switch's ability of propagating its clock to other devices that it is connected to. When the switch receives announce messages on an interface, it checks the clock class threshold and clock accuracy threshold values. If the values of these parameters are within the predefined limits, then the switch acts as per PTP standards specified in IEEE 1588v2. If the switch does not receive announce messages from external sources or if the parameters of the announce messages received are not within the predefined limits, the port state will be changed to listening mode. On a switch with no slave ports, the state of all the PTP enabled ports is rendered as listening and on a switch with one slave port, the BMCA is used to determine states on all PTP enabled ports. Convergence time prevents timing loops at the PTP level when grandmaster capability is disabled on a switch. If the slave port is not selected on the switch, all the ports on the switch will be in listening state for a minimum interval specified in the convergence time. The convergence time range is from 3 to 2600 seconds and the default value is 3 seconds.

The interface cost applies to each PTP enabled port if the switch has more than one path to grandmaster clock. The port with the least cost value is elected as slave and the rest of the ports will remain as passive ports.

The clock identity is a unique 8-octet array presented in the form of a character array based on the switch MAC address. The clock identity is determined from MAC according to the IEEE1588v2-2008 specifications. The clock ID is a combination of bytes in a VLAN MAC address as defined in IEEE1588v2.

## PTP Device Types

The following clocks are common PTP devices:

### Ordinary clock

Communicates with the network based on a single physical port, similar to an end host. An ordinary clock can function as a grandmaster clock.

### Boundary clock

Typically has several physical ports, with each port behaving like a port of an ordinary clock. However, each port shares the local clock, and the clock data sets are common to all ports. Each port decides its individual state, either master (synchronizing other ports connected to it) or slave (synchronizing to a downstream port), based on the best clock available to it through all of the other ports on the boundary clock. Messages that are related to synchronization and establishing the master-slave hierarchy terminate in the protocol engine of a boundary clock and are not forwarded.

### Transparent clock

Forwards all PTP messages like an ordinary switch or router but measures the residence time of a packet in the switch (the time that the packet takes to traverse the transparent clock) and in some cases the link delay of the ingress port for the packet. The ports have no state because the transparent clock does not need to synchronize to the grandmaster clock.

There are two kinds of transparent clocks:

#### End-to-end transparent clock

Measures the residence time of a PTP message and accumulates the times in the correction field of the PTP message or an associated follow-up message.

### Peer-to-peer transparent clock

Measures the residence time of a PTP message and computes the link delay between each port and a similarly equipped port on another node that shares the link. For a packet, this incoming link delay is added to the residence time in the correction field of the PTP message or an associated follow-up message.



**Note** PTP operates only in boundary clock mode. We recommend that you deploy a Grand Master Clock (10 MHz) upstream. The servers contain clocks that require synchronization and are connected to the switch.

End-to-end transparent clock and peer-to-peer transparent clock modes are not supported.

## PTP Process

The PTP process consists of two phases: establishing the master-slave hierarchy and synchronizing the clocks.

Within a PTP domain, each port of an ordinary or boundary clock follows this process to determine its state:

- Examines the contents of all received announce messages (issued by ports in the master state)
- Compares the data sets of the foreign master (in the announce message) and the local clock for priority, clock class, accuracy, and so on
- Determines its own state as either master or slave

After the master-slave hierarchy has been established, the clocks are synchronized as follows:

- The master sends a synchronization message to the slave and notes the time it was sent.
- The slave receives the synchronization message and notes the time that it was received. For every synchronization message, there is a follow-up message. The number of sync messages should be equal to the number of follow-up messages.
- The slave sends a delay-request message to the master and notes the time it was sent.
- The master receives the delay-request message and notes the time it was received.
- The master sends a delay-response message to the slave. The number of delay request messages should be equal to the number of delay response messages.
- The slave uses these timestamps to adjust its clock to the time of its master.

## Clock Management

By default, Cisco NX-OS uses NTP to update the system clock. However, if the **clock protocol** property is configured to **PTP**, PTP is allowed to update the system clock.

If PTP is enabled, NTP does not update the system time.

## High Availability for PTP

Stateful restarts are supported for PTP. After a reboot or a supervisor switchover, the running configuration is applied.

## Licensing Requirements for PTP

PTP requires no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the Cisco NX-OS system images and is provided at no extra charge to you. For a complete explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the *Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*.

## Guidelines and Limitations for PTP

- PTP operates only in boundary clock mode. End-to-end transparent clock and peer-to-peer transparent clock modes are not supported.
- PTP supports transport over User Datagram Protocol (UDP). Transport over Ethernet is not supported.
- PTP supports only multicast communication. Negotiated unicast communication is not supported.
- PTP is limited to a single domain per network.
- All management messages are forwarded on ports on which PTP is enabled. Handling management messages is not supported.
- PTP is not supported on interfaces which reside on GEMs (Generic Expansion modules) and can only be configured on interfaces which are fixed to the chassis (non-modular)
- PTP is only configurable on switch ports. Configuring PTP on FEX ports is not supported.
- PTP-capable ports do not identify PTP packets and do not time-stamp or redirect those packets unless you enable PTP on those ports.
- PTP is only supported on physical Ethernet-based ports.
- In VPC environments, PTP must be individually configured on each member port.
- PTP over FabricPath is not supported.

## Default Settings for PTP

The following table lists the default settings for PTP parameters.

**Table 2: Default PTP Parameters**

Parameters	Default
PTP	Disabled

Parameters	Default
PTP version	2
PTP domain	0. PTP multi domain is disabled by default.
PTP priority 1 value when advertising the clock	255
PTP priority 2 value when advertising the clock	255
PTP announce interval	1 log second
PTP announce timeout	3 announce intervals
PTP minimum delay request interval	0 log seconds
PTP VLAN	1

## Configuring PTP

### Configuring PTP Globally

You can enable or disable PTP globally on a device. You can also configure various PTP clock parameters to help determine which clock in the network has the highest priority to be selected as the grandmaster.

#### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>[no] feature ptp</b>	Enables or disables PTP on the device.  <b>Note</b> Enabling PTP on the switch does not enable PTP on each interface.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config) # <b>[no] ptp source</b> <i>ip-address</i> <b>[vrf vrf]</b>	Configures the source IP address for all PTP packets.  The <i>ip-address</i> can be in IPv4 or IPv6 format.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config) # <b>[no] ptp domain</b> <i>number</i>	Configures the domain number to use for this clock. PTP domains allow you to use multiple independent PTP clocking subdomains on a single network.  The range for the <i>number</i> is from 0 to 128.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config) # <b>[no] ptp priority1</b> <i>value</i>	Configures the priority1 value to use when advertising this clock. This value overrides the default criteria (clock quality, clock class, and

	Command or Action	Purpose
		so on) for the best master clock selection. Lower values take precedence.  The range for the <i>value</i> is from 0 to 255.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch(config) # <b>[no] ptp priority2 value</b>	Configures the priority2 value to use when advertising this clock. This value is used to decide between two devices that are otherwise equally matched in the default criteria. For example, you can use the priority2 value to give a specific switch priority over other identical switches.  The range for the <i>value</i> is from 0 to 255.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) switch(config) # <b>show ptp brief</b>	Displays the PTP status.
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) switch(config) # <b>show ptp clock</b>	Displays the properties of the local clock.
<b>Step 9</b>	(Optional) switch(config) # <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure PTP globally on the device, specify the source IP address for PTP communications, and configure a preference level for the clock:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# feature ptp
switch(config)# ptp source 10.10.10.1
switch(config)# ptp priority1 1
switch(config)# ptp priority2 1
switch(config)# show ptp brief
PTP port status
-----
Port State
-----
switch(config)# show ptp clock
PTP Device Type: Boundary clock
Clock Identity : 0:22:55:ff:ff:79:a4:c1
Clock Domain: 0
Number of PTP ports: 0
Priority1 : 1
Priority2 : 1
Clock Quality:
Class : 248
Accuracy : 254
Offset (log variance) : 65535
Offset From Master : 0
Mean Path Delay : 0
Steps removed : 0
Local clock time:Sun Jul 3 14:13:24 2011
switch(config)#
```

## Configuring PTP on an Interface

After you globally enable PTP, it is not enabled on all supported interfaces by default. You must enable PTP interfaces individually.

### Before you begin

Make sure that you have globally enabled PTP on the switch and configured the source IP address for PTP communication.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>interface ethernet slot/port</b>	Specifies the interface on which you are enabling PTP and enters interface configuration mode.  <b>Note</b> If this is a QSFP+ GEM or a breakout port, the <i>port</i> syntax is <i>QSFP-module/port</i> .
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-if) # <b>[no] feature ptp</b>	Enables or disables PTP on an interface.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config-if) # <b>[no] ptp announce {interval log seconds   timeout count}</b>	Configures the interval between PTP announce messages on an interface or the number of PTP intervals before a timeout occurs on an interface.  The range for the PTP announcement interval is from 0 to 4 seconds, and the range for the interval timeout is from 2 to 10.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config-if) # <b>[no] ptp delay request minimum interval log seconds</b>	Configures the minimum interval allowed between PTP delay-request messages when the port is in the master state.  The range is from log(-6) to log(1) seconds. Where, log(-2) = 2 frames per second.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch(config-if) # <b>[no] ptp sync interval log seconds</b>	Configures the interval between PTP synchronization messages on an interface.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) switch(config-if) # <b>[no] ptp vlan vlan-id</b>	Specifies the VLAN for the interface where PTP is being enabled. You can only enable PTP on one VLAN on an interface.  The range is from 1 to 4094.
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) switch(config-if) # <b>show ptp brief</b>	Displays the PTP status.
<b>Step 9</b>	(Optional) switch(config-if) # <b>show ptp port interface interface slot/port</b>	Displays the status of the PTP port.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<b>Note</b> If this is a QSFP+ GEM or a breakout port, the <i>port</i> syntax is <i>QSFP-module/port</i> .
<b>Step 10</b>	(Optional) switch(config-if)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to configure PTP on an interface and configure the intervals for the announce, delay-request, and synchronization messages:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/1
switch(config-if)# ptp
switch(config-if)# ptp announce interval 3
switch(config-if)# ptp announce timeout 2
switch(config-if)# ptp delay-request minimum interval 4
switch(config-if)# ptp sync interval -1
switch(config-if)# show ptp brief
PTP port status
-----
Port State
-----
Eth2/1 Master
switch(config-if)# show ptp port interface ethernet 1/1
PTP Port Dataset: Eth1/1
Port identity: clock identity: f4:4e:05:ff:fe:84:7e:7c
Port identity: port number: 0
PTP version: 2
Port state: Slave
VLAN info: 1
Delay request interval(log mean): 0
Announce receipt time out: 3
Peer mean path delay: 0
Announce interval(log mean): 1
Sync interval(log mean): 1
Delay Mechanism: End to End
Cost: 255
Domain: 5
switch(config-if)#
```

## Verifying the PTP Configuration

Use one of the following commands to verify the configuration:

**Table 3: PTP Show Commands**

Command	Purpose
<b>show ptp brief</b>	Displays the PTP status.



Command	Purpose
<b>show ptp clock</b>	Displays the properties of the local clock, including the clock identity.
<b>show ptp clock foreign-masters-record</b>	Displays the state of foreign masters known to the PTP process. For each foreign master, the output displays the clock identity, basic clock properties, and whether the clock is being used as a grandmaster.
<b>show ptp corrections</b>	Displays the last few PTP corrections.
<b>show ptp parent</b>	Displays the properties of the PTP parent.
<b>show ptp port interface ethernet <i>slot/port</i></b>	Displays the status of the PTP port on the switch.  <b>Note</b> If this is a QSFP+ GEM or a breakout port, the <i>port</i> syntax is <i>QSFP-module/port</i> .
<b>show ptp domain data</b>	Displays multiple domain data, domain priority, clock threshold and information about grandmaster capabilities.
<b>show ptp interface domain</b>	Displays information about the interface to domain association.
<b>show ptp cost</b>	Displays PTP port to cost association.

## Feature History for PTP

This table lists the release history for this feature.

Feature Name	Release	Information
PTP	7.1(1)N1(1)	PTP is a time synchronization protocol for nodes distributed across a network. Its hardware timestamp feature provides greater accuracy than other time synchronization protocols such as the Network Time Protocol (NTP).





## CHAPTER 7

# Configuring User Accounts and RBAC

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About User Accounts and RBAC, on page 73](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for User Accounts, on page 79](#)
- [Configuring User Accounts, on page 79](#)
- [Configuring RBAC, on page 81](#)
- [Verifying the User Accounts and RBAC Configuration, on page 85](#)
- [Configuring User Accounts Default Settings for the User Accounts and RBAC, on page 86](#)

## Information About User Accounts and RBAC

Cisco Nexus Series switches use role-based access control (RBAC) to define the amount of access that each user has when the user logs into the switch.

With RBAC, you define one or more user roles and then specify which management operations each user role is allowed to perform. When you create a user account for the switch, you associate that account with a user role, which then determines what the individual user is allowed to do on the switch.

## User Roles

User roles contain rules that define the operations allowed for the user who is assigned the role. Each user role can contain multiple rules and each user can have multiple roles. For example, if role1 allows access only to configuration operations, and role2 allows access only to debug operations, users who belong to both role1 and role2 can access configuration and debug operations. You can also limit access to specific VSANs, VLANs, and interfaces.

The switch provides the following default user roles:

### **network-admin (superuser)**

Complete read and write access to the entire switch.

### **network-operator**

Complete read access to the switch. However, the network-operator role cannot run the **show running-config** and **show startup-config** commands.

**san-admin**

Complete read and write access to Fibre Channel and FCoE administrative tasks using SNMP or CLI.



**Note** If you belong to multiple roles, you can execute a combination of all the commands permitted by these roles. Access to a command takes priority over being denied access to a command. For example, suppose a user has RoleA, which denied access to the configuration commands. However, the user also has RoleB, which has access to the configuration commands. In this case, the user has access to the configuration commands.



**Note** Only network-admin user can perform a Checkpoint or Rollback in the RBAC roles. Though other users have these commands as a permit rule in their role, the user access is denied when you try to execute these commands.

## Predefined SAN Admin User Role

The SAN admin user role is a noneditable, predefined user role that is designed to provide separation between LAN and SAN administrative tasks. Users that have been assigned the SAN admin user role have read-only access to all Ethernet configuration tasks. Write access for Ethernet features is not granted to SAN admin users unless it is assigned to them through another user role.

The following capabilities are permitted to SAN admin users:

- Interface configuration
- Attribute configuration for Fibre Channel Unified Ports, except creation and deletion
- VSAN configuration, including database and membership
- Mapping of preconfigured VLANs for FCoE to VSANs
- Zoning configuration
- Configuration of SNMP-related parameters, except SNMP community and SNMP users
- Read-only access to all other configurations
- Configuration and management of SAN features such as the following:
  - FC-SP
  - FC-PORT-SECURITY
  - FCoE
  - FCoE-NPV
  - FPORT-CHANNEL-TRUNK
  - PORT-TRACK
  - FABRIC-BINDING
- Configuration and management for the following of EXEC mode commands:
  - DEBUG

- FCDOMAIN
- FCPING
- SAN-PORT-CHANNEL
- SHOW
- ZONE
- ZONESET

**Note**

The SAN Admin role permits configuration on all interface types, not just Fibre Channel interfaces. The predefined SAN Admin user role was designed to allow access to all interfaces—including Ethernet interfaces—so it would not interfere with SNMP operations.

## Rules

The rule is the basic element of a role. A rule defines what operations the role allows the user to perform. You can apply rules for the following parameters:

**Command**

A command or group of commands defined in a regular expression.

**Feature**

Commands that apply to a function provided by the Cisco Nexus device. Enter the **show role feature** command to display the feature names available for this parameter.

**Feature group**

Default or user-defined group of features. Enter the **show role feature-group** command to display the default feature groups available for this parameter.

These parameters create a hierarchical relationship. The most basic control parameter is the command. The next control parameter is the feature, which represents all commands associated with the feature. The last control parameter is the feature group. The feature group combines related features and allows you to easily manage the rules.

You can configure up to 256 rules for each role. The user-specified rule number determines the order in which the rules are applied. Rules are applied in descending order. For example, if a role has three rules, rule 3 is applied before rule 2, which is applied before rule 1.

## SAN Admin Role-Feature Rule Mapping

The SAN admin role is not editable. The following role-features are part of preconfigured role. The preconfigured role comes complete read access and the following rules:

Table 4: Role-Feature Rules for SAN Admin User Role

Feature	Permissions
copy	Read and write permissions for copy-related commands
fabric-binding	Read and write permissions for fabric binding-related commands
fcdomain	Read and write permissions for Fibre Channel domain-related commands
fcfe	Read and write permissions for Fibre Channel FE-related commands
fcmgmt	Read and write permissions for Fibre Channel management-related commands
fcons	Read and write permissions for Fibre Channel-related service FCNS commands
fcoe	Read and write permissions for Fibre Channel over Ethernet-related commands
fcsp	Read and write permissions for Fibre Channel Security Protocol (FCSP)-related commands
fdmi	Read and write permissions for Fabric Device Management Interface (FDMI)-related commands
fspf	Read and write permissions for Fabric Shortest Path First (FSPF)-related commands
interface	Read and write permissions for interface-related commands, which includes all interfaces, not just Fibre Channel interfaces.
port-track	Read and write permissions for port track-related commands
port-security	Read and write permissions for port security-related commands
rdl	Read and write permissions for Remote Domain Loopback (RDL)-related commands
rmon	Read and write permissions for RMON-related commands
rscn	Read and write permissions for Registered State Change Notification (RSCN)-related commands
snmp	Read and write permissions for SNMP-related commands

Feature	Permissions
snmpTargetAddrEntry	Read and write permissions for SNMP trap target-related commands
snmpTargetParamsEntry	Read and write permissions for SNMP trap target parameter-related commands
span	Read and write permissions for SPAN-related commands
trapRegEntry	Read and write permissions for SNMP trap registry-related commands
trunk	Read and write permissions for Fibre Channel port channel trunk-related commands
vsan	Read and write permissions for VSAN-related commands
vsanIfvsan	Read and write permissions for FCoE VLAN-VSAN mapping command-related commands
wwnm	Read and write permissions for World Wide Name (WWN)-related commands
zone	Read and write permissions for zoning commands

## User Role Policies

You can define user role policies to limit the switch resources that the user can access, or to limit access to interfaces, VLANs, and VSANs.

User role policies are constrained by the rules defined for the role. For example, if you define an interface policy to permit access to specific interfaces, the user does not have access to the interfaces unless you configure a command rule for the role to permit the **interface** command.

If a command rule permits access to specific resources (interfaces, VLANs, or VSANs), the user is permitted to access these resources, even if the user is not listed in the user role policies associated with that user.

## User Account Configuration Restrictions

The following words are reserved and cannot be used to configure users:

- adm
- bin
- daemon
- ftp
- ftpuser
- games

- gdm
- gopher
- halt
- lp
- mail
- mailnull
- man
- mtsuser
- news
- nobody
- san-admin
- shutdown
- sync
- sys
- uucp
- xfs

**Caution**

The Cisco Nexus 5000 and 6000 Series switch does not support all numeric usernames, even if those usernames were created in TACACS+ or RADIUS. If an all numeric username exists on an AAA server and is entered during login, the switch rejects the login request.

Usernames must begin with an alphanumeric character and can contain only these special characters: ( + = . \_ \ -). The # and ! symbols are not supported. If the username contains characters that are not allowed, the specified user is unable to log in. Effective from Cisco NX-OS release 7.3(0)N1(1), usernames starting with \_ (underscore) are supported.

## User Password Requirements

Cisco Nexus device passwords are case sensitive and can contain alphanumeric characters only. Special characters, such as the dollar sign (\$) or the percent sign (%), are not allowed.

**Note**

Starting from Cisco NX-OS Release 7.2(0)N1(1), special characters, such as the dollar sign (\$) or the percent sign (%), can be used in Cisco Nexus device passwords.

If a password is trivial (such as a short, easy-to-decipher password), the Cisco Nexus device rejects the password. Be sure to configure a strong password for each user account. A strong password has the following characteristics:



- At least eight characters long
- Does not contain many consecutive characters (such as "abcd")
- Does not contain many repeating characters (such as "aaabbb")
- Does not contain dictionary words
- Does not contain proper names
- Contains both uppercase and lowercase characters
- Contains numbers

The following are examples of strong passwords:

- If2CoM18
- 2009AsdfLkj30
- Cb1955S21



---

**Note** For security reasons, user passwords do not display in the configuration files.

---

## Guidelines and Limitations for User Accounts

User accounts have the following guidelines and limitations when configuring user accounts and RBAC:

- Up to 256 rules can be added to a user role.
- A maximum of 64 user roles can be assigned to a user account.
- You can assign a user role to more than one user account.
- Predefined roles such as network-admin, network-operator, and san-admin are not editable.
- Add, delete, and editing of rules is not supported for the SAN admin user role.
- The interface, VLAN, and/or VSAN scope cannot be changed for the SAN admin user role.



---

**Note** A user account must have at least one user role.

---

## Configuring User Accounts



---

**Note** Changes to user account attributes do not take effect until the user logs in and creates a new session.

---

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show role</b>	Displays the user roles available. You can configure other user roles, if necessary.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config) # <b>username</b> <i>user-id</i> [ <b>password</b> <i>password</i> ] [ <b>expire date</b> ] [ <b>role</b> <i>role-name</i> ]	Configures a user account.  The <i>user-id</i> is a case-sensitive, alphanumeric character string with a maximum of 28 characters.  The default <i>password</i> is undefined.  <b>Note</b> If you do not specify a password, the user might not be able to log into the switch.  The <b>expire date</b> option format is YYYY-MM-DD. The default is no expiry date.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config) # <b>exit</b>	Exits global configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show user-account</b>	Displays the role configuration.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

**Example**

The following example shows how to configure a user account:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# username NewUser password 4Ty18Rnt
switch(config)# exit
switch# show user-account
```

## Configuring SAN Admin Users

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>username</b> <i>user-id</i> <b>role</b> <b>san-admin</b> <b>password</b> <i>password</i>	Configures SAN admin user role access for the specified user.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config) # <b>show user-account</b>	Displays the role configuration.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config) # <b>show snmp-user</b>	Displays the SNMP user configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure a SAN admin user and display the user account and SNMP user configuration:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# username user1 role san-admin password xyz123
switch(config)# show user-account
user:admin
    this user account has no expiry date
    roles:network-admin
user:user1
    this user account has no expiry date
    roles:san-admin
switch(config) # show snmp user
```

#### SNMP USERS

User	Auth	Priv(enforce)	Groups
admin	md5	des(no)	network-admin
user1	md5	des(no)	san-admin

#### NOTIFICATION TARGET USES (configured for sending V3 Inform)

User	Auth	Priv
------	------	------

```
switch(config) #
```

## Configuring RBAC

### Creating User Roles and Rules

The rule number that you specify determines the order in which the rules are applied. Rules are applied in descending order. For example, if a role has three rules, rule 3 is applied before rule 2, which is applied before rule 1.

#### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<code>switch(config) # <b>role name</b> <i>role-name</i></code>	Specifies a user role and enters role configuration mode.  The <i>role-name</i> argument is a case-sensitive, alphanumeric character string with a maximum of 16 characters.
<b>Step 3</b>	<code>switch(config-role) # <b>rule number</b> {deny   permit} <b>command</b> <i>command-string</i></code>	Configures a command rule.  The <i>command-string</i> can contain spaces and regular expressions. For example, interface ethernet * includes all Ethernet interfaces.  Repeat this command for as many rules as needed.
<b>Step 4</b>	<code>switch(config-role)# <b>rule number</b> {deny   permit} {read   read-write}</code>	Configures a read-only or read-and-write rule for all operations.
<b>Step 5</b>	<code>switch(config-role)# <b>rule number</b> {deny   permit} {read   read-write} <b>feature</b> <i>feature-name</i></code>	Configures a read-only or read-and-write rule for a feature.  Use the <b>show role feature</b> command to display a list of features.  Repeat this command for as many rules as needed.
<b>Step 6</b>	<code>switch(config-role)# <b>rule number</b> {deny   permit} {read   read-write} <b>feature-group</b> <i>group-name</i></code>	Configures a read-only or read-and-write rule for a feature group.  Use the <b>show role feature-group</b> command to display a list of feature groups.  Repeat this command for as many rules as needed.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) <code>switch(config-role)# <b>description</b> <i>text</i></code>	Configures the role description. You can include spaces in the description.
<b>Step 8</b>	<code>switch(config-role)# <b>end</b></code>	Exits role configuration mode.
<b>Step 9</b>	(Optional) <code>switch# <b>show role</b></code>	Displays the user role configuration.
<b>Step 10</b>	(Optional) <code>switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b></code>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to create user roles and specify rules:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# role name UserA
```

```

switch(config-role) # rule deny command clear users
switch(config-role) # rule deny read-write
switch(config-role) # description This role does not allow users to use clear commands
switch(config-role) # end
switch(config) # show role

```

## Creating Feature Groups

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>role feature-group</b> <i>group-name</i>	Specifies a user role feature group and enters role feature group configuration mode.  The <i>group-name</i> is a case-sensitive, alphanumeric character string with a maximum of 32 characters.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config) # <b>exit</b>	Exits global configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show role feature-group</b>	Displays the role feature group configuration.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to create a feature group:

```

switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # role feature-group group1
switch(config) # exit
switch# show role feature-group
switch# copy running-config startup-config
switch#

```

## Changing User Role Interface Policies

You can change a user role interface policy to limit the interfaces that the user can access. Specify a list of interfaces that the role can access. You can specify it for as many interfaces as needed.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>role name</b> <i>role-name</i>	Specifies a user role and enters role configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-role) # <b>interface policy deny</b>	Enters role interface policy configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config-role-interface) # <b>permit interface</b> <i>interface-list</i>	Specifies a list of interfaces that the role can access.  Repeat this command for as many interfaces as needed.  For this command, you can specify Ethernet interfaces, Fibre Channel interfaces, and virtual Fibre Channel interfaces.
<b>Step 5</b>	switch(config-role-interface) # <b>exit</b>	Exits role interface policy configuration mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch(config-role) # <b>show role</b>	Displays the role configuration.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) switch(config-role) # <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to change a user role interface policy to limit the interfaces that the user can access:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# role name UserB
switch(config-role)# interface policy deny
switch(config-role-interface)# permit interface ethernet 2/1
switch(config-role-interface)# permit interface fc 3/1
switch(config-role-interface)# permit interface vfc 30/1
```

## Changing User Role VLAN Policies

You can change a user role VLAN policy to limit the VLANs that the user can access.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>role name</b> <i>role-name</i>	Specifies a user role and enters role configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-role) # <b>vlan policy deny</b>	Enters role VLAN policy configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config-role-vlan) # <b>permit vlan</b> <i>vlan-list</i>	Specifies a range of VLANs that the role can access.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		Repeat this command for as many VLANs as needed.
<b>Step 5</b>	switch(config-role-vlan) # <b>exit</b>	Exits role VLAN policy configuration mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show role</b>	Displays the role configuration.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Changing User Role VSAN Policies

You can change a user role VSAN policy to limit the VSANs that the user can access.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config-role) # <b>role name</b> <i>role-name</i>	Specifies a user role and enters role configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-role) # <b>vsan policy deny</b>	Enters role VSAN policy configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config-role-vsan) # <b>permit vsan</b> <i>vsan-list</i>	Specifies a range of VSANs that the role can access.  Repeat this command for as many VSANs as needed.
<b>Step 5</b>	switch(config-role-vsan) # <b>exit</b>	Exits role VSAN policy configuration mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show role</b>	Displays the role configuration.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Verifying the User Accounts and RBAC Configuration

Use one of the following commands to verify the configuration:

Command	Purpose
<b>show role</b> [ <i>role-name</i> ]	Displays the user role configuration
<b>show role feature</b>	Displays the feature list.

Command	Purpose
<b>show role feature-group</b>	Displays the feature group configuration.
<b>show startup-config security</b>	Displays the user account configuration in the startup configuration.
<b>show running-config security [all]</b>	Displays the user account configuration in the running configuration. The <b>all</b> keyword displays the default values for the user accounts.
<b>show user-account</b>	Displays user account information.

## Configuring User Accounts Default Settings for the User Accounts and RBAC

The following table lists the default settings for user accounts and RBAC parameters.

**Table 5: Default User Accounts and RBAC Parameters**

Parameters	Default
User account password	Undefined.
User account expiry date	None.
Interface policy	All interfaces are accessible.
VLAN policy	All VLANs are accessible.
VFC policy	All VFCs are accessible.
VETH policy	All VETHs are accessible.





## CHAPTER 8

# Configuring Session Manager

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About Session Manager, on page 87](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for Session Manager, on page 87](#)
- [Configuring Session Manager, on page 88](#)
- [Verifying the Session Manager Configuration, on page 90](#)

## Information About Session Manager

Session Manager allows you to implement your configuration changes in batch mode. Session Manager works in the following phases:

- **Configuration session**—Creates a list of commands that you want to implement in session manager mode.
- **Validation**—Provides a basic semantic check on your configuration. Cisco NX-OS returns an error if the semantic check fails on any part of the configuration.
- **Verification**—Verifies the configuration as a whole, based on the existing hardware and software configuration and resources. Cisco NX-OS returns an error if the configuration does not pass this verification phase.
- **Commit**—Cisco NX-OS verifies the complete configuration and implements the changes atomically to the device. If a failure occurs, Cisco NX-OS reverts to the original configuration.
- **Abort**—Discards the configuration changes before implementation.

You can optionally end a configuration session without committing the changes. You can also save a configuration session.

## Guidelines and Limitations for Session Manager

Session Manager has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- Session Manager supports only the access control list (ACL) feature.
- You can create up to 32 configuration sessions.
- You can configure a maximum of 20,000 commands across all sessions.

# Configuring Session Manager

## Creating a Session

You can create up to 32 configuration sessions.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure session</b> <i>name</i>	Creates a configuration session and enters session configuration mode. The name can be any alphanumeric string.  Displays the contents of the session.
<b>Step 2</b>	(Optional) switch(config-s)# <b>show configuration session</b> [ <i>name</i> ]	Displays the contents of the session.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config-s)# <b>save</b> <i>location</i>	Saves the session to a file. The location can be in bootflash or volatile.

## Configuring ACLs in a Session

You can configure ACLs within a configuration session.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure session</b> <i>name</i>	Creates a configuration session and enters session configuration mode. The name can be any alphanumeric string.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config-s)# <b>ip access-list</b> <i>name</i>	Creates an ACL.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config-s-acl)# <b>permit</b> <i>protocol source destination</i>	Adds a permit statement to the ACL.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config-s-acl)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface-type number</i>	Enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	switch(config-s-if)# <b>ip port access-group</b> <i>name</i> <b>in</b>	Adds a port access group to the interface.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show configuration session</b> [ <i>name</i> ]	Displays the contents of the session.

## Verifying a Session

To verify a session, use the following command in session mode:

Command	Purpose
switch(config-s)# <b>verify</b> [ <b>verbose</b> ]	Verifies the commands in the configuration session.

## Committing a Session

To commit a session, use the following command in session mode:

Command	Purpose
switch(config-s)# <b>commit</b> [ <b>verbose</b> ]	Commits the commands in the configuration session.

## Saving a Session

To save a session, use the following command in session mode:

Command	Purpose
switch(config-s)# <b>save</b> <i>location</i>	(Optional) Saves the session to a file. The location can be in bootflash or volatile.

## Discarding a Session

To discard a session, use the following command in session mode:

Command	Purpose
switch(config-s)# <b>abort</b>	Discards the configuration session without applying the commands.

## Configuration Example for Session Manager

The following example shows how to create a configuration session for ACLs:

```
switch# configure session name test2
switch(config-s) # ip access-list acl2
switch(config-s-acl) # permit tcp any any
switch(config-s-acl) # exit
switch(config-s) # interface Ethernet 1/4
switch(config-s-ip) # ip port access-group acl2 in
switch(config-s-ip) # exit
switch(config-s) # verify
switch(config-s) # exit
```

```
switch# show configuration session test2
```

## Verifying the Session Manager Configuration

To verify Session Manager configuration information, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
<b>show configuration session</b> [ <i>name</i> ]	Displays the contents of the configuration session.
<b>show configuration session status</b> [ <i>name</i> ]	Displays the status of the configuration session.
<b>show configuration session summary</b>	Displays a summary of all the configuration sessions.



## CHAPTER 9

# Configuring Online Diagnostics

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About Online Diagnostics, on page 91](#)
- [Configuring Online Diagnostics, on page 93](#)
- [Verifying the Online Diagnostics Configuration, on page 94](#)
- [Default Settings for Online Diagnostics, on page 94](#)

## Information About Online Diagnostics

Online diagnostics provide verification of hardware components during switch bootup or reset, and they monitor the health of the hardware during normal switch operation.

Cisco Nexus Series switches support bootup diagnostics and runtime diagnostics. Bootup diagnostics include disruptive tests and nondisruptive tests that run during system bootup and system reset.

Runtime diagnostics (also known as health monitoring diagnostics) include nondisruptive tests that run in the background during normal operation of the switch.

## Bootup Diagnostics

Bootup diagnostics detect faulty hardware before bringing the switch online. Bootup diagnostics also check the data path and control path connectivity between the supervisor and the ASICs. The following table describes the diagnostics that are run only during switch bootup or reset.

**Table 6: Bootup Diagnostics**

Diagnostic	Description
PCIe	Tests PCI express (PCIe) access.
NVRAM	Verifies the integrity of the NVRAM.
In band port	Tests connectivity of the inband port to the supervisor.
Management port	Tests the management port.
Memory	Verifies the integrity of the DRAM.

Bootup diagnostics also include a set of tests that are common with health monitoring diagnostics.

Bootup diagnostics log any failures to the onboard failure logging (OBFL) system. Failures also trigger an LED display to indicate diagnostic test states (on, off, pass, or fail).

You can configure Cisco Nexus device to either bypass the bootup diagnostics or run the complete set of bootup diagnostics.

## Health Monitoring Diagnostics

Health monitoring diagnostics provide information about the health of the switch. They detect runtime hardware errors, memory errors, software faults, and resource exhaustion.

Health monitoring diagnostics are nondisruptive and run in the background to ensure the health of a switch that is processing live network traffic.

The following table describes the health monitoring diagnostics for the switch.

**Table 7: Health Monitoring Diagnostics Tests**

Diagnostic	Description
LED	Monitors port and system status LEDs.
Power Supply	Monitors the power supply health state.
Temperature Sensor	Monitors temperature sensor readings.
Test Fan	Monitors the fan speed and fan control.



### Note

When the switch reaches the intake temperature threshold and does not go within the limits in 60 seconds, the switch will power off and the power supplies will have to be re-seated to recover the switch

The following table describes the health monitoring diagnostics that also run during system boot or system reset.

**Table 8: Health Monitoring and Bootup Diagnostics Tests**

Diagnostic	Description
SPROM	Verifies the integrity of backplane and supervisor SPROMs.
Fabric engine	Tests the switch fabric ASICs.
Fabric port	Tests the ports on the switch fabric ASIC.
Forwarding engine	Tests the forwarding engine ASICs.
Forwarding engine port	Tests the ports on the forwarding engine ASICs.
Front port	Tests the components (such as PHY and MAC) on the front ports.



**Note** When the switch exceeds the intake temperature threshold of 40 degrees Celsius and does not decrease to within the threshold limits in 60 seconds, the switch powers off and the power supplies must be re-seated to recover the switch.

## Expansion Module Diagnostics

During the switch bootup or reset, the bootup diagnostics include tests for the in-service expansion modules in the switch.

When you insert an expansion module into a running switch, a set of diagnostics tests are run. The following table describes the bootup diagnostics for an expansion module. These tests are common with the bootup diagnostics. If the bootup diagnostics fail, the expansion module is not placed into service.

**Table 9: Expansion Module Bootup and Health Monitoring Diagnostics**

Diagnostic	Description
SPROM	Verifies the integrity of backplane and supervisor SPROMs.
Fabric engine	Tests the switch fabric ASICs.
Fabric port	Tests the ports on the switch fabric ASIC.
Forwarding engine	Tests the forwarding engine ASICs.
Forwarding engine port	Tests the ports on the forwarding engine ASICs.
Front port	Tests the components (such as PHY and MAC) on the front ports.

Health monitoring diagnostics are run on in-service expansion modules. The following table describes the additional tests that are specific to health monitoring diagnostics for expansion modules.

**Table 10: Expansion Module Health Monitoring Diagnostics**

Diagnostic	Description
LED	Monitors port and system status LEDs.
Temperature Sensor	Monitors temperature sensor readings.

## Configuring Online Diagnostics

You can configure the bootup diagnostics to run the complete set of tests, or you can bypass all bootup diagnostic tests for a faster module boot up time.



**Note** We recommend that you set the bootup online diagnostics level to complete. We do not recommend bypassing the bootup online diagnostics.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>diagnostic bootup level</b> [ <b>complete</b>   <b>bypass</b> ]	Configures the bootup diagnostic level to trigger diagnostics when the device boots, as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>complete</b>—Performs all bootup diagnostics. This is the default value.</li> <li>• <b>bypass</b>—Does not perform any bootup diagnostics.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show diagnostic bootup level</b>	Displays the bootup diagnostic level (bypass or complete) that is currently in place on the switch.

**Example**

The following example shows how to configure the bootup diagnostics level to trigger the complete diagnostics:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# diagnostic bootup level complete
```

## Verifying the Online Diagnostics Configuration

Use the following commands to verify online diagnostics configuration information:

Command	Purpose
<b>show diagnostic bootup level</b>	Displays the bootup diagnostics level.
<b>show diagnostic result module slot</b>	Displays the results of the diagnostics tests.

## Default Settings for Online Diagnostics

The following table lists the default settings for online diagnostics parameters.

*Table 11: Default Online Diagnostics Parameters*

Parameters	Default
Bootup diagnostics level	complete





## CHAPTER 10

# Configuring System Message Logging

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About System Message Logging, on page 95](#)
- [Licensing Requirements for System Message Logging, on page 96](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for System Message Logging, on page 96](#)
- [Default Settings for System Message Logging, on page 96](#)
- [Configuring System Message Logging, on page 97](#)
- [Verifying the System Message Logging Configuration, on page 108](#)
- [Configuring ACL Logging, on page 109](#)

## Information About System Message Logging

You can use system message logging to control the destination and to filter the severity level of messages that system processes generate. You can configure logging to terminal sessions, a log file, and syslog servers on remote systems.

System message logging is based on [RFC 3164](#). For more information about the system message format and the messages that the device generates, see the *Cisco NX-OS System Messages Reference*.

By default, the Cisco Nexus device outputs messages to terminal sessions.

By default, the switch logs system messages to a log file.

The following table describes the severity levels used in system messages. When you configure the severity level, the system outputs messages at that level and lower.

**Table 12: System Message Severity Levels**

Level	Description
0 – emergency	System unusable
1 – alert	Immediate action needed
2 – critical	Critical condition
3 – error	Error condition
4 – warning	Warning condition

Level	Description
5 – notification	Normal but significant condition
6 – informational	Informational message only
7 – debugging	Appears during debugging only

The switch logs the most recent 100 messages of severity 0, 1, or 2 to the NVRAM log. You cannot configure logging to the NVRAM.

You can configure which system messages should be logged based on the facility that generated the message and its severity level.

## Syslog Servers

Syslog servers run on remote systems that are configured to log system messages based on the syslog protocol. You can configure the Cisco Nexus Series switch to send logs to up to eight syslog servers.

To support the same configuration of syslog servers on all switches in a fabric, you can use Cisco Fabric Services (CFS) to distribute the syslog server configuration.



### Note

When the switch first initializes, messages are sent to syslog servers only after the network is initialized.

## Licensing Requirements for System Message Logging

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	System message logging requires no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the Cisco NX-OS system images and is provided at no extra charge to you. For a complete explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the <i>Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide</i> .

## Guidelines and Limitations for System Message Logging

System messages are logged to the console and the logfile by default.

## Default Settings for System Message Logging

The following table lists the default settings for system message logging parameters.

Table 13: Default System Message Logging Parameters

Parameters	Default
Console logging	Enabled at severity level 2
Monitor logging	Enabled at severity level 2
Log file logging	Enabled to log messages at severity level 5
Module logging	Enabled at severity level 5
Facility logging	Enabled
Time-stamp units	Seconds
Syslog server logging	Disabled
Syslog server configuration distribution	Disabled

# Configuring System Message Logging

## Configuring System Message Logging to Terminal Sessions

You can configure the switch to log messages by their severity level to console, Telnet, and Secure Shell sessions.

By default, logging is enabled for terminal sessions.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>terminal monitor</b>	Copies syslog messages from the console to the current terminal session.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config)# <b>logging console</b> [severity-level]	Enables the switch to log messages to the console session based on a specified severity level or higher (a lower number value indicates a higher severity level). Severity levels range from 0 to 7: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 – emergency</li> <li>• 1 – alert</li> <li>• 2 – critical</li> <li>• 3 – error</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 4 – warning</li> <li>• 5 – notification</li> <li>• 6 – informational</li> <li>• 7 – debugging</li> </ul> <p>If the severity level is not specified, the default of 2 is used.</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>no logging console</b> [severity-level]	Disables logging messages to the console.
<b>Step 5</b>	switch(config)# <b>logging monitor</b> [severity-level]	<p>Enables the switch to log messages to the monitor based on a specified severity level or higher (a lower number value indicates a higher severity level). Severity levels range from 0 to 7:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 – emergency</li> <li>• 1 – alert</li> <li>• 2 – critical</li> <li>• 3 – error</li> <li>• 4 – warning</li> <li>• 5 – notification</li> <li>• 6 – informational</li> <li>• 7 – debugging</li> </ul> <p>If the severity level is not specified, the default of 2 is used.</p> <p>The configuration applies to Telnet and SSH sessions.</p>
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>no logging monitor</b> [severity-level]	Disables logging messages to Telnet and SSH sessions.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show logging console</b>	Displays the console logging configuration.
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show logging monitor</b>	Displays the monitor logging configuration.
<b>Step 9</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure a logging level of 3 for the console:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# logging console 3
```

The following example shows how to display the console logging configuration:

```
switch# show logging console
Logging console:                  enabled (Severity: error)
```

The following example shows how to disable logging for the console:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# no logging console
```

The following example shows how to configure a logging level of 4 for the terminal session:

```
switch# terminal monitor
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# logging monitor 4
```

The following example shows how to display the terminal session logging configuration:

```
switch# show logging monitor
Logging monitor:                  enabled (Severity: warning)
```

The following example shows how to disable logging for the terminal session:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# no logging monitor
```

## Configuring System Message Logging to a File

You can configure the switch to log system messages to a file. By default, system messages are logged to the file log:messages.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>logging logfile</b> <i>logfile-name</i> <i>severity-level</i> [ <b>size</b> <i>bytes</i> ]	Configures the name of the log file used to store system messages and the minimum severity level to log. You can optionally specify a maximum file size. The default severity level is 5 and the file size is 4194304.  When you configure a new logfile without specifying the size, the existing/previously specified logfile size is assigned and the default file size is not considered.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		Severity levels range from 0 to 7: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 – emergency</li> <li>• 1 – alert</li> <li>• 2 – critical</li> <li>• 3 – error</li> <li>• 4 – warning</li> <li>• 5 – notification</li> <li>• 6 – informational</li> <li>• 7 – debugging</li> </ul> The file size is from 4096 to 10485760 bytes.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>no logging logfile</b> [logfile-name severity-level [size bytes]]	Disables logging to the log file. You can optionally specify a maximum file size. The default severity level is 5 and the file size is 4194304.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show logging info</b>	Displays the logging configuration. You can optionally specify a maximum file size. The default severity level is 5 and the file size is 4194304.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure a switch to log system messages to a file:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# logging logfile my_log 6 size 4194304
```

The following example shows how to display the logging configuration (some of the output has been removed for brevity):

```
switch# show logging info
Logging console:          enabled (Severity: debugging)
Logging monitor:         enabled (Severity: debugging)
Logging linecard:        enabled (Severity: notifications)
Logging fex:             enabled (Severity: notifications)
Logging timestamp:       Seconds
Logging server:          disabled
Logging logfile:         enabled
                        Name - my_log: Severity - informational Size - 4194304
Facility                 Default Severity      Current Session Severity
-----
aaa                      3                      3
aclmgr                   3                      3
```

afm	3	3
altos	3	3
auth	0	0
authpriv	3	3
bootvar	5	5
callhome	2	2
capability	2	2
cdp	2	2
cert_enroll	2	2
...		

## Configuring Module and Facility Messages Logging

You can configure the severity level and time-stamp units of messages logged by modules and facilities.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>logging module</b> [ <i>severity-level</i> ]	<p>Enables module log messages that have the specified severity level or higher. Severity levels range from 0 to 7:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 – emergency</li> <li>• 1 – alert</li> <li>• 2 – critical</li> <li>• 3 – error</li> <li>• 4 – warning</li> <li>• 5 – notification</li> <li>• 6 – informational</li> <li>• 7 – debugging</li> </ul> <p>If the severity level is not specified, the default of 5 is used.</p>
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config)# <b>logging level</b> <i>facility severity-level</i>	<p>Enables logging messages from the specified facility that have the specified severity level or higher. Severity levels from 0 to 7:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 – emergency</li> <li>• 1 – alert</li> <li>• 2 – critical</li> <li>• 3 – error</li> <li>• 4 – warning</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 5 – notification</li> <li>• 6 – informational</li> <li>• 7 – debugging</li> </ul> <p>To apply the same severity level to all facilities, use the all facility. For defaults, see the <b>show logging level</b> command.</p> <p><b>Note</b> If the default severity and current session severity of a component is the same, then the logging level for the component will not be displayed in the running configuration.</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>no logging module</b> [severity-level]	Disables module log messages.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>no logging level</b> [facility severity-level]	Resets the logging severity level for the specified facility to its default level. If you do not specify a facility and severity level, the switch resets all facilities to their default levels.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show logging module</b>	Displays the module logging configuration.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show logging level</b> [facility]	Displays the logging level configuration and the system default level by facility. If you do not specify a facility, the switch displays levels for all facilities.
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure the severity level of module and specific facility messages:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# logging module 3
switch(config)# logging level aaa 2
```

## Configuring Logging Timestamps

You can configure the time-stamp units of messages logged by the Cisco Nexus Series switch.



**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>logging timestamp</b> {microseconds   milliseconds   seconds}	Sets the logging time-stamp units. By default, the units are seconds.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>no logging timestamp</b> {microseconds   milliseconds   seconds}	Resets the logging time-stamp units to the default of seconds.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show logging timestamp</b>	Displays the logging time-stamp units configured.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

**Example**

The following example shows how to configure the time-stamp units of messages:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# logging timestamp milliseconds
switch(config)# exit
switch# show logging timestamp
Logging timestamp:                Milliseconds
```

## Configuring Syslog Servers

You can configure up to eight syslog servers that reference remote systems where you want to log system messages.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch# configure terminal switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>logging server</b> <i>host</i> [ <i>severity-level</i> [ <b>use-vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> [ <i>facility facility</i> ]]]  <b>Example:</b> switch(config)# logging server 172.28.254.254 5 use-vrf default facility local3	Configures a host to receive syslog messages. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <i>host</i> argument identifies the hostname or the IPv4 or IPv6 address of the syslog server host.</li> <li>The <i>severity-level</i> argument limits the logging of messages to the syslog server to a specified level. Severity levels range</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>from 0 to 7. See <a href="#">Table 12: System Message Severity Levels</a> , on page 95.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <b>use vrf vrf-name</b> keyword and argument identify the <i>default</i> or <i>management</i> values for the virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) name. If a specific VRF is not identified, management is the default. However, if management is configured, it will not be listed in the output of the <b>show-running</b> command because it is the default. If a specific VRF is configured, the <b>show-running</b> command output will list the VRF for each server.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> The current Cisco Fabric Services (CFS) distribution does not support VRF. If CFS distribution is enabled, the logging server configured with the default VRF is distributed as the management VRF.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The facility argument names the syslog facility type. The default outgoing facility is local7.</li> </ul> <p>The facilities are listed in the command reference for the Cisco Nexus Series software that you are using.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Debugging is a CLI facility but the debug syslogs are not sent to the server.</p>
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) <b>no logging server host</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# no logging server 172.28.254.254 5</pre>	Removes the logging server for the specified host.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) <b>show logging server</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# show logging server</pre>	Displays the syslog server configuration.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following examples show how to configure a syslog server:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# logging server 172.28.254.254 5
use-vrf default facility local3

switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# logging server 172.28.254.254 5 use-vrf management facility local3
```

## Configuring syslog on a UNIX or Linux System

You can configure a syslog server on a UNIX or Linux system by adding the following line to the `/etc/syslog.conf` file:

```
facility.level <five tab characters> action
```

The following table describes the syslog fields that you can configure.

**Table 14: syslog Fields in `syslog.conf`**

Field	Description
Facility	Creator of the message, which can be auth, authpriv, cron, daemon, kern, lpr, mail, mark, news, syslog, user, local0 through local7, or an asterisk (*) for all. These facility designators allow you to control the destination of messages based on their origin.  <b>Note</b> Check your configuration before using a local facility.
Level	Minimum severity level at which messages are logged, which can be debug, info, notice, warning, err, crit, alert, emerg, or an asterisk (*) for all. You can use none to disable a facility.
Action	Destination for messages, which can be a filename, a hostname preceded by the at sign (@), or a comma-separated list of users or an asterisk (*) for all logged-in users.

### Procedure

- 
- Step 1** Log debug messages with the local7 facility in the file `/var/log/myfile.log` by adding the following line to the `/etc/syslog.conf` file:
- ```
debug.local7 /var/log/myfile.log
```
- Step 2** Create the log file by entering these commands at the shell prompt:
- ```
$ touch /var/log/myfile.log
$ chmod 666 /var/log/myfile.log
```
- Step 3** Make sure that the system message logging daemon reads the new changes by checking `myfile.log` after entering this command:

```
$ kill -HUP ~cat /etc/syslog.pid~
```

## Configuring syslog Server Configuration Distribution

You can distribute the syslog server configuration to other switches in the network by using the Cisco Fabric Services (CFS) infrastructure.

After you enable syslog server configuration distribution, you can modify the syslog server configuration and view the pending changes before committing the configuration for distribution. As long as distribution is enabled, the switch maintains pending changes to the syslog server configuration.



### Note

If the switch is restarted, the syslog server configuration changes that are kept in volatile memory might get lost.

### Before you begin

You must have configured one or more syslog servers.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>logging distribute</b>	Enables distribution of the syslog server configuration to network switches using the CFS infrastructure. By default, distribution is disabled.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config)# <b>logging commit</b>	Commits the pending changes to the syslog server configuration for distribution to the switches in the fabric.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config)# <b>logging abort</b>	Cancels the pending changes to the syslog server configuration.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>no logging distribute</b>	Disables the distribution of the syslog server configuration to network switches using the CFS infrastructure. You cannot disable distribution when configuration changes are pending. See the <b>logging commit</b> and <b>logging abort</b> commands. By default, distribution is disabled.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show logging pending</b>	Displays the pending changes to the syslog server configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show logging pending-diff</b>	Displays the differences from the current syslog server configuration to the pending changes of the syslog server configuration.
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show logging internal info</b>	Displays information about the current state of the syslog server distribution and the last action taken.
<b>Step 9</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Displaying and Clearing Log Files

You can display or clear messages in the log file and the NVRAM.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>show logging last</b> <i>number-lines</i>	Displays the last number of lines in the logging file. You can specify from 1 to 9999 for the last number of lines.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch# <b>show logging logfile</b> [ <b>start-time</b> yyyy mmm dd hh:mm:ss] [ <b>end-time</b> yyyy mmm dd hh:mm:ss]	Displays the messages in the log file that have a time stamp within the span entered. If you do not enter an end time, the current time is used. You enter three characters for the month time field and digits for the year and day time fields.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch# <b>show logging nvram</b> [ <b>last</b> <i>number-lines</i> ]	Displays the messages in the NVRAM. To limit the number of lines displayed, you can enter the last number of lines to display. You can specify from 1 to 100 for the last number of lines.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch# <b>clear logging logfile</b>	Clears the contents of the log file.
<b>Step 5</b>	switch# <b>clear logging nvram</b>	Clears the logged messages in NVRAM.

### Example

The following example shows how to display messages in a log file:

```
switch# show logging last 40
switch# show logging logfile start-time 2007 nov 1 15:10:0
switch# show logging nvram last 10
```

The following example shows how to clear messages in a log file:

```
switch# clear logging logfile
```

```
switch# clear logging nvram
```

## Verifying the System Message Logging Configuration

Use these commands to verify system message logging configuration information:

Command	Purpose
<b>show logging console</b>	Displays the console logging configuration.
<b>show logging info</b>	Displays the logging configuration.
<b>show logging internal info</b>	Displays the syslog distribution information.
<b>show logging ip access-list cache</b>	Displays the IP access list cache.
<b>show logging ip access-list cache detail</b>	Displays detailed information about the IP access list cache.
<b>show logging ip access-list status</b>	Displays the status of the IP access list cache.
<b>show logging last <i>number-lines</i></b>	Displays the last number of lines of the log file.
<b>show logging level [<i>facility</i>]</b>	Displays the facility logging severity level configuration.
<b>show logging logfile</b> [ <i>start-time yyyy mmm dd hh:mm:ss</i> ] [ <i>end-time yyyy mmm dd hh:mm:ss</i> ]	Displays the messages in the log file.
<b>show logging module</b>	Displays the module logging configuration.
<b>show logging monitor</b>	Displays the monitor logging configuration.
<b>show logging nvram</b> [ <i>last number-lines</i> ]	Displays the messages in the NVRAM log.
<b>show logging pending</b>	Displays the syslog server pending distribution configuration.
<b>show logging pending-diff</b>	Displays the syslog server pending distribution configuration differences.
<b>show logging server</b>	Displays the syslog server configuration.
<b>show logging session</b>	Displays the logging session status.
<b>show logging status</b>	Displays the logging status.
<b>show logging timestamp</b>	Displays the logging time-stamp units configuration.
<b>show running-config aclog</b>	Displays the running configuration for the ACL log file.

# Configuring ACL Logging

## Information About ACL Logging

The Access Control List (ACL) logging feature allows the logging of the packets which hit the IPv4 ACLs. The log message is displayed on a flow basis. The flow is identified using the combination of IP source address, destination address, Layer 4 protocol, and the Layer 4 source/destination ports on an interface. The log message is generated based on the following conditions:

- When a new flow is created (INFO message)
- When the flow's packet threshold is reached (WARNING message)
- At the end of a periodic interval (default five minutes) with the information about how many packets hit the flow (INFO message - configurable)

Along with the above, when the number of flows exceeds a threshold in a given interval, a warning message is logged and the flow is not added to the logging cache.

The following table describes the limitation in the Cisco Nexus device.

**Table 15: ACL Logging Support Table**

Feature	Cisco Nexus Device	
	Logging support	
PACL	Yes	Drop only
Egress RACL	Yes	Drop only
Ingress RACL	No	
Egress VACL	Yes	Drop only
Ingress VACL	Yes	
RBACL	N/A	
VTY ACL In/Out	Yes	Drop Log
Ingress RACL on mgmt0	Yes	Permit/Drop
SNMP ACL		
NTP ACL		
CTS	Yes	
Software-Based RACL	Yes	

Except for the VTY ACL, all other ACLs support ACL logging for only the "deny" ACE entries. However, since the same ACL can be applied for both vty ACL and other features, "permit <> log" CLI cannot be

blocked. However, applying such an ACL to any of the interfaces/vlans can be prevented. Mgmt0 supports permit logging.

In the Cisco Nexus device, CTS is not supported, therefore RBACL is not supported.

ACL logging is not supported for IPv6 and MAC ACLs. It is supported on all interfaces where PACL, RACL, VACL and VTY can be applied, including FEX HIF interfaces.

The ACL logging is rate-limited. All the packets that hit the ACL are not sent to the sup. The rate limiter function is per switch and is applied across all ASIC and TCAM regions. The following CLIs will be provided to configure the rate.

## Configuring the ACL Logging Cache

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>logging ip access-list cache entries</b> <i>num_entries</i>	Sets the maximum number of log entries cached in software. The range is from 0 to 1000000 entries. The default value is 8000 entries.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config)# <b>logging ip access-list cache interval</b> <i>seconds</i>	Sets the number of seconds between log updates. Also if an entry is inactive for this duration, it is removed from the cache. The range is from 5 to 86400 seconds. The default value is 300 seconds.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config)# <b>logging ip access-list cache threshold</b> <i>num_packets</i>	Sets the number of packet matches before an entry is logged. The range is from 0 to 1000000 packets. The default value is 0 packets, which means that logging is not triggered by the number of packet matches.
<b>Step 5</b>	switch(config)# <b>logging ip access-list include sgt</b>	Includes the source group tag information in the syslogs.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example show how to set the maximum number of log entries to 5000, the interval to 120 seconds, and the threshold to 500000:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# logging ip access-list cache entries 5000
switch(config)# logging ip access-list cache interval 120
switch(config)# logging ip access-list cache threshold 500000
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```



## Applying ACL Logging to an Interface

### Before you begin

- Create an IP access list with at least one access control entry (ACE) configured for logging.
- Configure the ACL logging cache.
- Configure the ACL log match level.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>interface mgmt0</b>	Specifies the mgmt0 interface.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-if)# <b>ip access-group name in</b>	Enables ACL logging on ingress traffic for the specified interface.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config-if)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to apply the mgmt0 interface with the logging specified in acl1 for all ingress traffic:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface mgmt0
switch(config-if)# ip access-group acl1 in
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Configuring the ACL Log Match Level

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>aclog match-log-level</b> <i>number</i>	Specifies the logging level to match for entries to be logged in the ACL log (aclog). The <i>number</i> is a value from 0 to 7. The default is 6.  <b>Note</b> For log messages to be entered in the logs, the logging level for the ACL log facility (aclog) and the logging severity level for the logfile must be greater than or equal to the ACL log match log level setting. For more information, see <a href="#">Configuring Module and Facility Messages Logging, on page 101</a> and <a href="#">Configuring System Message Logging to a File, on page 99</a> .
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Configuring Rate Limiter for ACL Logging

You can limit the number of logged packets that are sent to the supervisor (CPU) to be logged to the cache.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>hardware rate-limiter access-list-log packets</b> <i>num-packets</i>	<i>num-packets</i> —Value in packets per second. Valid range is 50 to 600000. The default is 100 packets per second.

### Example

This example shows how to set the rate limiter to 1000 packets per second.

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# hardware rate-limiter access-list-log packets 1000
```

## Clearing ACL Logs

You can clear the ACL logs.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>clear logging ip access-list cache</b>	Clears the IP configuration access list cache.

## Verifying ACL Logging

Use one of the following commands to verify the configuration:

Command	Purpose
<b>show logging ip access-list status</b>	Displays the ACLLOG status.
<b>show logging ip access-list cache [detail]</b>	Displays the entries in cache and optionally additional details.
<b>show acllog status</b>	Displays flow counts and rate limits
<b>show acllog flows</b>	Displays the currently active logged flows.





## CHAPTER 11

# Configuring Smart Call Home

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About Smart Call Home, on page 115](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for Smart Call Home, on page 123](#)
- [Prerequisites for Smart Call Home, on page 123](#)
- [Default Call Home Settings, on page 123](#)
- [Configuring Smart Call Home, on page 124](#)
- [Verifying the Smart Call Home Configuration, on page 134](#)
- [Sample Syslog Alert Notification in Full-Text Format, on page 134](#)
- [Sample Syslog Alert Notification in XML Format, on page 135](#)

## Information About Smart Call Home

Smart Call Home provides e-mail-based notification of critical system events. Cisco Nexus Series switches provide a range of message formats for optimal compatibility with pager services, standard e-mail, or XML-based automated parsing applications. You can use this feature to page a network support engineer, e-mail a Network Operations Center, or use Cisco Smart Call Home services to automatically generate a case with the Technical Assistance Center (TAC).

If you have a service contract directly with Cisco, you can register your devices for the Smart Call Home service. Smart Call Home provides fast resolution of system problems by analyzing Smart Call Home messages sent from your devices and providing background information and recommendations. For issues that can be identified as known, particularly GOLD diagnostics failures, Automatic Service Requests will be generated by the Cisco TAC.

Smart Call Home offers the following features:

- Continuous device health monitoring and real-time diagnostic alerts.
- Analysis of Smart Call Home messages from your device and, where appropriate, Automatic Service Request generation, routed to the appropriate TAC team, including detailed diagnostic information to speed problem resolution.
- Secure message transport directly from your device or through a downloadable Transport Gateway (TG) aggregation point. You can use a TG aggregation point in cases that require support for multiple devices or in cases where security requirements mandate that your devices may not be connected directly to the Internet.

- Web-based access to Smart Call Home messages and recommendations, inventory and configuration information for all Smart Call Home devices, and field notices, security advisories, and end-of-life information.

## Smart Call Home Overview

You can use Smart Call Home to notify an external entity when an important event occurs on your device. Smart Call Home delivers alerts to multiple recipients that you configure in destination profiles.

Smart Call Home includes a fixed set of predefined alerts on your switch. These alerts are grouped into alert groups and CLI commands that are assigned to execute when an alert in an alert group occurs. The switch includes the command output in the transmitted Smart Call Home message.

The Smart Call Home feature offers the following:

- Automatic execution and attachment of relevant CLI command output.
- Multiple message format options such as the following:
  - Short Text—Text that is suitable for pagers or printed reports.
  - Full Text—Fully formatted message information that is suitable for human reading.
  - XML—Matching readable format that uses the Extensible Markup Language (XML) and the Adaptive Messaging Language (AML) XML schema definition (XSD). The XML format enables communication with the Cisco TAC.
- Multiple concurrent message destinations. You can configure up to 50 e-mail destination addresses for each destination profile.

## Smart Call Home Destination Profiles

A Smart Call Home destination profile includes the following information:

- One or more alert groups—The group of alerts that trigger a specific Smart Call Home message if the alert occurs.
- One or more e-mail destinations—The list of recipients for the Smart Call Home messages that are generated by alert groups assigned to this destination profile.
- Message format—The format for the Smart Call Home message (short text, full text, or XML).
- Message severity level—The Smart Call Home severity level that the alert must meet before the switch generates a Smart Call Home message to all e-mail addresses in the destination profile. The switch does not generate an alert if the Smart Call Home severity level of the alert is lower than the message severity level set for the destination profile.

You can also configure a destination profile to allow periodic inventory update messages by using the inventory alert group that will send out periodic messages daily, weekly, or monthly.

Cisco Nexus switches support the following predefined destination profiles:

- CiscoTAC-1—Supports the Cisco-TAC alert group in XML message format.
- full-text-destination—Supports the full text message format.

- short-text-destination—Supports the short text message format.

## Smart Call Home Alert Groups

An alert group is a predefined subset of Smart Call Home alerts that are supported in all Cisco Nexus devices. Alert groups allow you to select the set of Smart Call Home alerts that you want to send to a predefined or custom destination profile. The switch sends Smart Call Home alerts to e-mail destinations in a destination profile only if that Smart Call Home alert belongs to one of the alert groups associated with that destination profile and if the alert has a Smart Call Home message severity at or above the message severity set in the destination profile.

The following table lists the supported alert groups and the default CLI command output included in Smart Call Home messages generated for the alert group.

**Table 16: Alert Groups and Executed Commands**

Alert Group	Description	Executed Commands
Cisco-TAC	All critical alerts from the other alert groups destined for Smart Call Home.	Execute commands based on the alert group that originates the alert.
Diagnostic	Events generated by diagnostics.	<b>show diagnostic result module all detail</b> <b>show moduleshow version</b> <b>show tech-support platform callhome</b>
Supervisor hardware	Events related to supervisor modules.	<b>show diagnostic result module all detail</b> <b>show moduleshow version</b> <b>show tech-support platform callhome</b>
Linecard hardware	Events related to standard or intelligent switching modules.	<b>show diagnostic result module all detail</b> <b>show moduleshow version</b> <b>show tech-support platform callhome</b>
Configuration	Periodic events related to configuration.	<b>show version</b> <b>show module</b> <b>show running-config all</b> <b>show startup-config</b>
System	Events generated by a failure of a software system that is critical to unit operation.	<b>show system redundancy status</b> <b>show tech-support</b>
Environmental	Events related to power, fan, and environment-sensing elements such as temperature alarms.	<b>show environment</b> <b>show logging last 1000</b> <b>show module show version</b> <b>show tech-support platform callhome</b>

Alert Group	Description	Executed Commands
Inventory	Inventory status that is provided whenever a unit is cold booted, or when FRUs are inserted or removed. This alert is considered a noncritical event, and the information is used for status and entitlement.	<b>show module</b> <b>show version</b> <b>show license usage</b> <b>show inventory</b> <b>show sprom all</b> <b>show system uptime</b>

Smart Call Home maps the syslog severity level to the corresponding Smart Call Home severity level for syslog port group messages.

You can customize predefined alert groups to execute additional **show** commands when specific events occur and send that **show** output with the Smart Call Home message.

You can add **show** commands only to full text and XML destination profiles. Short text destination profiles do not support additional **show** commands because they only allow 128 bytes of text.

## Smart Call Home Message Levels

Smart Call Home allows you to filter messages based on their level of urgency. You can associate each destination profile (predefined and user defined) with a Smart Call Home message level threshold. The switch does not generate any Smart Call Home messages with a value lower than this threshold for the destination profile. The Smart Call Home message level ranges from 0 (lowest level of urgency) to 9 (highest level of urgency), and the default is 0 (the switch sends all messages).

Smart Call Home messages that are sent for syslog alert groups have the syslog severity level mapped to the Smart Call Home message level.



### Note

Smart Call Home does not change the syslog message level in the message text.

The following table shows each Smart Call Home message level keyword and the corresponding syslog level for the syslog port alert group.

**Table 17: Severity and Syslog Level Mapping**

Smart Call Home Level	Keyword	Syslog Level	Description
9	Catastrophic	N/A	Network-wide catastrophic failure.
8	Disaster	N/A	Significant network impact.
7	Fatal	Emergency (0)	System is unusable.
6	Critical	Alert (1)	Critical conditions that indicate that immediate attention is needed.
5	Major	Critical (2)	Major conditions.



Smart Call Home Level	Keyword	Syslog Level	Description
4	Minor	Error (3)	Minor conditions.
3	Warning	Warning (4)	Warning conditions.
2	Notification	Notice (5)	Basic notification and informational messages.
1	Normal	Information (6)	Normal event signifying return to normal state.
0	Debugging	Debug (7)	Debugging messages.

## Call Home Message Formats

Call Home supports the following message formats:

- Short text message format
- Common fields for all full text and XML messages
- Inserted fields for a reactive or proactive event message
- Inserted fields for an inventory event message
- Inserted fields for a user-generated test message

The following table describes the short text formatting option for all message types.

**Table 18: Short Text Message Format**

Data Item	Description
Device identification	Configured device name
Date/time stamp	Time stamp of the triggering event
Error isolation message	Plain English description of triggering event
Alarm urgency level	Error level such as that applied to a system message

The following table describes the common event message format for full text or XML.

**Table 19: Common Fields for All Full Text and XML Messages**

Data Item (Plain Text and XML)	Description (Plain Text and XML)	XML Tag (XML Only)
Time stamp	Date and time stamp of event in ISO time notation:  YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS GMT+HH:MM	/aml/header/time

Data Item (Plain Text and XML)	Description (Plain Text and XML)	XML Tag (XML Only)
Message name	Name of message. Specific event names are listed in the preceding table.	/aml/header/name
Message type	Name of message type, such as reactive or proactive.	/aml/header/type
Message group	Name of alert group, such as syslog.	/aml/header/group
Severity level	Severity level of message.	/aml/header/level
Source ID	Product type for routing.	/aml/header/source
Device ID	<p>Unique device identifier (UDI) for the end device that generated the message. This field should be empty if the message is nonspecific to a device. The format is <i>type@Sid@serial</i>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>type</i> is the product model number from backplane IDPROM.</li> <li>• <i>@</i> is a separator character.</li> <li>• <i>Sid</i> is C, identifying the serial ID as a chassis serial number.</li> <li>• <i>serial</i> is the number identified by the Sid field.</li> </ul> <p>An example is WS-C6509@C@12345678</p>	/aml/ header/deviceID
Customer ID	Optional user-configurable field used for contract information or other ID by any support service.	/aml/ header/customerID
Contract ID	Optional user-configurable field used for contract information or other ID by any support service.	/aml/ header /contractID
Site ID	Optional user-configurable field used for Cisco-supplied site ID or other data meaningful to alternate support service.	/aml/ header/siteID

Data Item (Plain Text and XML)	Description (Plain Text and XML)	XML Tag (XML Only)
Server ID	<p>If the message is generated from the device, this is the unique device identifier (UDI) of the device.</p> <p>The format is <i>type@Sid@serial</i>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>type</i> is the product model number from backplane IDPROM.</li> <li>• <i>@</i> is a separator character.</li> <li>• <i>Sid</i> is C, identifying the serial ID as a chassis serial number.</li> <li>• <i>serial</i> is the number identified by the Sid field.</li> </ul> <p>An example is WS-C6509@C@12345678</p>	/aml/header/serverID
Message description	Short text that describes the error.	/aml/body/msgDesc
Device name	Node that experienced the event (hostname of the device).	/aml/body/sysName
Contact name	Name of person to contact for issues associated with the node that experienced the event.	/aml/body/sysContact
Contact e-mail	E-mail address of person identified as the contact for this unit.	/aml/body/sysContactEmail
Contact phone number	Phone number of the person identified as the contact for this unit.	/aml/body/sysContactPhoneNumber
Street address	Optional field that contains the street address for RMA part shipments associated with this unit.	/aml/body/sysStreetAddress
Model name	Model name of the device (the specific model as part of a product family name).	/aml/body/chassis/name
Serial number	Chassis serial number of the unit.	/aml/body/chassis/serialNo
Chassis part number	Top assembly number of the chassis.	/aml/body/chassis/partNo
Fields specific to a particular alert group message are inserted here.		
The following fields may be repeated if multiple CLI commands are executed for this alert group.		

Data Item (Plain Text and XML)	Description (Plain Text and XML)	XML Tag (XML Only)
Command output name	Exact name of the issued CLI command.	/aml/attachments/attachment/name
Attachment type	Specific command output.	/aml/attachments/attachment/type
MIME type	Either plain text or encoding type.	/aml/attachments/attachment/mime
Command output text	Output of command automatically executed.	/aml/attachments/attachment/atdata

The following table describes the reactive event message format for full text or XML.

**Table 20: Inserted Fields for a Reactive or Proactive Event Message**

Data Item (Plain Text and XML)	Description (Plain Text and XML)	XML Tag (XML Only)
Chassis hardware version	Hardware version of chassis.	/aml/body/chassis/hwVersion
Supervisor module software version	Top-level software version.	/aml/body/chassis/swVersion
Affected FRU name	Name of the affected FRU that is generating the event message.	/aml/body/fru/name
Affected FRU serial number	Serial number of the affected FRU.	/aml/body/fru/serialNo
Affected FRU part number	Part number of the affected FRU.	/aml/body/fru/partNo
FRU slot	Slot number of the FRU that is generating the event message.	/aml/body/fru/slot
FRU hardware version	Hardware version of the affected FRU.	/aml/body/fru/hwVersion
FRU software version	Software version(s) that is running on the affected FRU.	/aml/body/fru/swVersion

The following table describes the inventory event message format for full text or XML.

**Table 21: Inserted Fields for an Inventory Event Message**

Data Item (Plain Text and XML)	Description (Plain Text and XML)	XML Tag (XML Only)
Chassis hardware version	Hardware version of the chassis.	/aml/body/chassis/hwVersion
Supervisor module software version	Top-level software version.	/aml/body/chassis/swVersion
FRU name	Name of the affected FRU that is generating the event message.	/aml/body/fru/name
FRU s/n	Serial number of the FRU.	/aml/body/fru/serialNo
FRU part number	Part number of the FRU.	/aml/body/fru/partNo

Data Item (Plain Text and XML)	Description (Plain Text and XML)	XML Tag (XML Only)
FRU slot	Slot number of the FRU.	/aml/body/fru/slot
FRU hardware version	Hardware version of the FRU.	/aml/body/fru/hwVersion
FRU software version	Software version(s) that is running on the FRU.	/aml/body/fru/swVersion

The following table describes the user-generated test message format for full text or XML.

**Table 22: Inserted Fields for a User-Generated Test Message**

Data Item (Plain Text and XML)	Description (Plain Text and XML)	XML Tag (XML Only)
Process ID	Unique process ID.	/aml/body/process/id
Process state	State of process (for example, running or halted).	/aml/body/process/processState
Process exception	Exception or reason code.	/aml/body/process/exception

## Guidelines and Limitations for Smart Call Home

- If there is no IP connectivity, or if the interface in the virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) instance to the profile destination is down, the switch cannot send Smart Call Home messages.
- Operates with any SMTP e-mail server.

## Prerequisites for Smart Call Home

- You must have e-mail server connectivity.
- You must have access to contact name (SNMP server contact), phone, and street address information.
- You must have IP connectivity between the switch and the e-mail server.
- You must have an active service contract for the device that you are configuring.

## Default Call Home Settings

**Table 23: Default Call Home Parameters**

Parameters	Default
Destination message size for a message sent in full text format	4000000
Destination message size for a message sent in XML format	4000000

Parameters	Default
Destination message size for a message sent in short text format	4000
SMTP server port number if no port is specified	25
Alert group association with profile	All for full-text-destination and short-text-destination profiles. The cisco-tac alert group for the CiscoTAC-1 destination profile.
Format type	XML
Call Home message level	0 (zero)

# Configuring Smart Call Home

## Registering for Smart Call Home

### Before you begin

- Know the sMARTnet contract number for your switch
- Know your e-mail address
- Know your Cisco.com ID

### Procedure

- 
- Step 1** In a browser, navigate to the Smart Call Home web page:  
<http://www.cisco.com/go/smartcall/>
- Step 2** Under **Getting Started**, follow the directions to register Smart Call Home.
- 

### What to do next

Configure contact information.

## Configuring Contact Information

You must configure the e-mail, phone, and street address information for Smart Call Home. You can optionally configure the contract ID, customer ID, site ID, and switch priority information.

## Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>snmp-server contact</b> <i>sys-contact</i>	Configures the SNMP sysContact.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config)# <b>callhome</b>	Enters Smart Call Home configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config-callhome)# <b>email-contact</b> <i>email-address</i>	<p>Configures the e-mail address for the primary person responsible for the switch.</p> <p>The <i>email-address</i> can be up to 255 alphanumeric characters in an e-mail address format.</p> <p><b>Note</b> You can use any valid e-mail address. The address cannot contain spaces.</p>
<b>Step 5</b>	switch(config-callhome)# <b>phone-contact</b> <i>international-phone-number</i>	<p>Configures the phone number in international phone number format for the primary person responsible for the device. The <i>international-phone-number</i> can be up to 17 alphanumeric characters and must be in international phone number format.</p> <p><b>Note</b> The phone number cannot contain spaces. Use the plus (+) prefix before the number.</p>
<b>Step 6</b>	switch(config-callhome)# <b>streetaddress</b> <i>address</i>	<p>Configures the street address for the primary person responsible for the switch.</p> <p>The <i>address</i> can be up to 255 alphanumeric characters. Spaces are accepted.</p>
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) switch(config-callhome)# <b>contract-id</b> <i>contract-number</i>	<p>Configures the contract number for this switch from the service agreement.</p> <p>The <i>contract-number</i> can be up to 255 alphanumeric characters.</p>
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) switch(config-callhome)# <b>customer-id</b> <i>customer-number</i>	<p>Configures the customer number for this switch from the service agreement.</p> <p>The <i>customer-number</i> can be up to 255 alphanumeric characters.</p>
<b>Step 9</b>	(Optional) switch(config-callhome)# <b>site-id</b> <i>site-number</i>	<p>Configures the site number for this switch.</p> <p>The <i>site-number</i> can be up to 255 alphanumeric characters in free format.</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 10</b>	(Optional) switch(config-callhome)# <b>switch-priority</b> <i>number</i>	Configures the switch priority for this switch.  The range is from 0 to 7, with 0 being the highest priority and 7 the lowest. The default is 7.  <b>Note</b> Switch priority is used by the operations personnel or TAC support personnel to decide which Call Home message should be responded to first. You can prioritize Call Home alerts of the same severity from each switch.
<b>Step 11</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show callhome</b>	Displays a summary of the Smart Call Home configuration.
<b>Step 12</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure the contact information for Call Home:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# snmp-server contact personname@companyname.com
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome)# email-contact personname@companyname.com
switch(config-callhome)# phone-contact +1-800-123-4567
switch(config-callhome)# street-address 123 Anystreet St., Anycity, Anywhere
```

### What to do next

Create a destination profile.

## Creating a Destination Profile

You must create a user-defined destination profile and configure the message format for that new destination profile.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>callhome</b>	Enters Smart Call Home configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-callhome)# <b>destination-profile</b> <b>{ciscoTAC-1 {alert-group group   email-addr</b>	Creates a new destination profile and sets the message format for the profile. The



	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>address</code>   <code>http URL</code>   <code>transport-method</code> { <code>email</code>   <code>http</code> }   <code>profilename</code> { <code>alert-group group</code>   <code>email-addr address</code>   <code>format</code> { <code>XML</code>   <code>full-txt</code>   <code>short-txt</code> }   <code>http URL</code>   <code>message-level level</code>   <code>message-size size</code>   <code>transport-method</code> { <code>email</code>   <code>http</code> }   <code>full-txt-destination</code> { <code>alert-group group</code>   <code>email-addr address</code>   <code>http URL</code>   <code>message-level level</code>   <code>message-size size</code>   <code>transport-method</code> { <code>email</code>   <code>http</code> }   <code>short-txt-destination</code> { <code>alert-group group</code>   <code>email-addr address</code>   <code>http URL</code>   <code>message-level level</code>   <code>message-size size</code>   <code>transport-method</code> { <code>email</code>   <code>http</code> }}}	profile-name can be any alphanumeric string up to 31 characters.  For further details about this command, see the command reference for your platform.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) <code>switch# show callhome destination-profile [profile name]</code>	Displays information about one or more destination profiles.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) <code>switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</code>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to create a destination profile for Smart Call Home:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome)# destination-profile Noc101 format full-text
```

## Modifying a Destination Profile

You can modify the following attributes for a predefined or user-defined destination profile:

- Destination address—The actual address, pertinent to the transport mechanism, to which the alert should be sent.
- Message formatting—The message format used for sending the alert (full text, short text, or XML).
- Message level—The Call Home message severity level for this destination profile.
- Message size—The allowed length of a Call Home message sent to the e-mail addresses in this destination profile.



#### Note

You cannot modify or delete the CiscoTAC-1 destination profile.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>callhome</b>	Enters Smart Call Home configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-callhome)# <b>destination-profile</b> { <i>name</i>   <b>full-txt-destination</b>   <b>short-txt-destination</b> } <b>email-addr</b> <i>address</i>	Configures an e-mail address for a user-defined or predefined destination profile. You can configure up to 50 e-mail addresses in a destination profile.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>destination-profile</b> { <i>name</i>   <b>full-txt-destination</b>   <b>short-txt-destination</b> } <b>message-level</b> <i>number</i>	Configures the Smart Call Home message severity level for this destination profile. The switch sends only alerts that have a matching or higher Smart Call Home severity level to destinations in this profile. The range for the <i>number</i> is from 0 to 9, where 9 is the highest severity level.
<b>Step 5</b>	switch(config-callhome)# <b>destination-profile</b> { <i>name</i>   <b>full-txt-destination</b>   <b>short-txt-destination</b> } <b>message-size</b> <i>number</i>	Configures the maximum message size for this destination profile. The range is from 0 to 5000000 for full-txt-destination and the default is 2500000. The range is from 0 to 100000 for short-txt-destination and the default is 4000. The value is 5000000 for CiscoTAC-1, which is not changeable.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show callhome destination-profile</b> [ <i>profile name</i> ]	Displays information about one or more destination profiles.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

**Example**

The following example shows how to modify a destination profile for Smart Call Home:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome)# destination-profile full-text-destination email-addr
person@example.com
switch(config-callhome)# destination-profile full-text-destination message-level 5
switch(config-callhome)# destination-profile full-text-destination message-size 10000
switch(config-callhome)#
```

**What to do next**

Associate an alert group with a destination profile.

## Associating an Alert Group with a Destination Profile

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>callhome</b>	Enters Smart Call Home configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-callhome)# <b>destination-profile name alert-group {All   Cisco-TAC   Configuration   Diagnostic   Environmental   Inventory   License   Linecard-Hardware   Supervisor-Hardware   Syslog-group-port   System   Test}</b>	Associates an alert group with this destination profile. Use the <b>All</b> keyword to associate all alert groups with the destination profile.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show callhome destination-profile [profile name]</b>	Displays information about one or more destination profiles.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to associate all alert groups with the destination profile Noc101:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome)# destination-profile Noc101 alert-group All
switch(config-callhome)#
```

### What to do next

Optionally, you can add **show** commands to an alert group and configure the SMTP e-mail server.

## Adding Show Commands to an Alert Group

You can assign a maximum of five user-defined **show** commands to an alert group.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>callhome</b>	Enters Smart Call Home configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-callhome)# <b>alert-group {Configuration   Diagnostic   Environmental   Inventory   License   Linecard-Hardware  </b>	Adds the <b>show</b> command output to any Call Home messages sent for this alert group. Only valid <b>show</b> commands are accepted.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<b>Supervisor-Hardware   Syslog-group-port   System   Test} user-def-cmd <i>show-cmd</i></b>	<b>Note</b> You cannot add user-defined <b>show</b> commands to the CiscoTAC-1 destination profile.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show callhome user-def-cmds</b>	Displays information about all user-defined <b>show</b> commands added to alert groups.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to add the **show ip routing** command to the Cisco-TAC alert group:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome)# alert-group Configuration user-def-cmd show ip routing
switch(config-callhome)#
```

### What to do next

Configure Smart Call Home to connect to the SMTP e-mail server.

## Configuring E-Mail Server Details

You must configure the SMTP server address for the Smart Call Home functionality to work. You can also configure the from and reply-to e-mail addresses.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>callhome</b>	Enters Smart Call Home configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-callhome)# <b>transport email smtp-server <i>ip-address</i> [<i>port number</i>] [<i>use-vrf vrf-name</i>]</b>	Configures the SMTP server as either the domain name server (DNS) name, IPv4 address, or IPv6 address.  The <i>number</i> range is from 1 to 65535. The default port number is 25.  Optionally, you can configure the VRF instance to use when communicating with this SMTP server.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config-callhome)# <b>transport email from <i>email-address</i></b>	Configures the e-mail from field for Smart Call Home messages.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config-callhome)# <b>transport email reply-to</b> <i>email-address</i>	Configures the e-mail reply-to field for Smart Call Home messages.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show callhome transport-email</b>	Displays information about the e-mail configuration for Smart Call Home.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure the e-mail options for Smart Call Home messages:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome)# transport email smtp-server 192.0.2.10 use-vrf Red
switch(config-callhome)# transport email from person@example.com
switch(config-callhome)# transport email reply-to person@example.com
switch(config-callhome)#
```

### What to do next

Configure periodic inventory notifications.

## Configuring Periodic Inventory Notifications

You can configure the switch to periodically send a message with an inventory of all software services currently enabled and running on the device with hardware inventory information. The switch generates two Smart Call Home notifications; periodic configuration messages and periodic inventory messages.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>callhome</b>	Enters Smart Call Home configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-callhome)# <b>periodic-inventory notification</b> [ <i>interval days</i> ] [ <i>timeofday time</i> ]	Configures periodic inventory messages. The <i>interval days</i> range is from 1 to 30 days. The default is 7 days. The <i>timeofday time</i> is in HH:MM format.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show callhome</b>	Displays information about Smart Call Home.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure the periodic inventory messages to generate every 20 days:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome)# periodic-inventory notification interval 20
switch(config-callhome)#
```

### What to do next

Disable duplicate message throttling.

## Disabling Duplicate Message Throttling

You can limit the number of duplicate messages received for the same event. By default, the switch limits the number of duplicate messages received for the same event. If the number of duplicate messages sent exceeds 30 messages within a 2-hour time frame, the switch discards further messages for that alert type.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>callhome</b>	Enters Smart Call Home configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-callhome) # <b>no duplicate-message throttle</b>	Disables duplicate message throttling for Smart Call Home.  Duplicate message throttling is enabled by default.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to disable duplicate message throttling:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome)# no duplicate-message throttle
switch(config-callhome)#
```

### What to do next

Enable Smart Call Home.

## Enabling or Disabling Smart Call Home

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>callhome</b>	Enters Smart Call Home configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-callhome) # <b>[no] enable</b>	Enables or disables Smart Call Home. Smart Call Home is disabled by default.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to enable Smart Call Home:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome)# enable
switch(config-callhome)#
```

### What to do next

Optionally, generate a test message.

## Testing the Smart Call Home Configuration

### Before you begin

Verify that the message level for the destination profile is set to 2 or lower.



#### Important

Smart Call Home testing fails when the message level for the destination profile is set to 3 or higher.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>callhome</b>	Enters Smart Call Home configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-callhome) # <b>callhome send diagnostic</b>	Sends the specified Smart Call Home message to all configured destinations.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config-callhome) # <b>callhome test</b>	Sends a test message to all configured destinations.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to enable Smart Call Home:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome)# callhome send diagnostic
switch(config-callhome)# callhome test
switch(config-callhome)#
```

## Verifying the Smart Call Home Configuration

Use one of the following commands to verify the configuration:

Command	Purpose
<b>show callhome</b>	Displays the status for Smart Call Home.
<b>show callhome destination-profile</b> <i>name</i>	Displays one or more Smart Call Home destination profiles.
<b>show callhome pending-diff</b>	Displays the differences between the pending and running Smart Call Home configuration.
<b>show callhome status</b>	Displays the Smart Call Home status.
<b>show callhome transport-email</b>	Displays the e-mail configuration for Smart Call Home.
<b>show callhome user-def-cmds</b>	Displays CLI commands added to any alert groups.
<b>show running-config</b> [ <b>callhome</b>   <b>callhome-all</b> ]	Displays the running configuration for Smart Call Home.
<b>show startup-config callhome</b>	Displays the startup configuration for Smart Call Home.
<b>show tech-support callhome</b>	Displays the technical support output for Smart Call Home.

## Sample Syslog Alert Notification in Full-Text Format

This sample shows the full-text format for a syslog port alert-group notification:

```
source:MDS9000
Switch Priority:7
```



```

Device Id:WS-C6509@C@FG@07120011
Customer Id:Example.com
Contract Id:123
Site Id:San Jose
Server Id:WS-C6509@C@FG@07120011
Time of Event:2004-10-08T11:10:44
Message Name:SYSLOG_ALERT
Message Type:Syslog
Severity Level:2
System Name:10.76.100.177
Contact Name:User Name
Contact Email:person@example.com
Contact Phone:+1-408-555-1212
Street Address:#1234 Any Street, Any City, Any State, 12345
Event Description:2006 Oct 8 11:10:44 10.76.100.177 %PORT-5-IF_TRUNK_UP:
%$VLAN 1%$ Interface e2/5, vlan 1 is up
syslog_facility:PORT
start chassis information:
Affected Chassis:WS-C6509
Affected Chassis Serial Number:FG@07120011
Affected Chassis Hardware Version:0.104
Affected Chassis Software Version:3.1(1)
Affected Chassis Part No:73-8607-01
end chassis information:

```

## Sample Syslog Alert Notification in XML Format

This sample shows the XML format for a syslog port alert-group notification:

```

From: example
Sent: Wednesday, April 25, 2007 7:20 AM
To: User (user)
Subject: System Notification From Router - syslog - 2007-04-25 14:19:55
GMT+00:00
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<soap-env:Envelope xmlns:soap-env="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope">
<soap-env:Header>
<aml-session:Session xmlns:aml-session="http://www.example.com/2004/01/aml-session"
soap-env:mustUnderstand="true" soap-env:role=
"http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope/role/next">
<aml-session:To>http://tools.example.com/services/DDCEService</aml-session:To>
<aml-session:Path>
<aml-session:Via>http://www.example.com/appliance/uri</aml-session:Via>
</aml-session:Path>
<aml-session:From>http://www.example.com/appliance/uri</aml-session:From>
<aml-session:MessageId>M2:69000101:C9D9E20B</aml-session:MessageId>
</aml-session:Session>
</soap-env:Header>
<soap-env:Body>
<aml-block:Block xmlns:aml-block="http://www.example.com/2004/01/aml-block">
<aml-block:Header>
<aml-block:Type>http://www.example.com/2005/05/callhome/syslog</aml-block:Type>
<aml-block:CreationDate>2007-04-25 14:19:55 GMT+00:00</aml-block:CreationDate>
<aml-block:Builder>
<aml-block:Name>Cat6500</aml-block:Name>
<aml-block:Version>2.0</aml-block:Version>
</aml-block:Builder>
<aml-block:BlockGroup>
<aml-block:GroupId>G3:69000101:C9F9E20C</aml-block:GroupId>
<aml-block:Number>0</aml-block:Number>
<aml-block:IsLast>true</aml-block:IsLast>
<aml-block:IsPrimary>true</aml-block:IsPrimary>

```

```

<aml-block:WaitForPrimary>false</aml-block:WaitForPrimary>
</aml-block:BlockGroup>
<aml-block:Severity>2</aml-block:Severity>
</aml-block:Header>
<aml-block:Content>
<ch:Call Home xmlns:ch="http://www.example.com/2005/05/callhome" version="1.0">
<ch:EventTime>2007-04-25 14:19:55 GMT+00:00</ch:EventTime>
<ch:MessageDescription>03:29:29: %CLEAR-5-COUNTERS: Clear counter on all
interfaces by console</ch:MessageDescription>
<ch:Event>
<ch:Type>syslog</ch:Type>
<ch:SubType>
</ch:SubType>
<ch:Brand>Cisco Systems</ch:Brand>
<ch:Series>Catalyst 6500 Series Switches</ch:Series>
</ch:Event>
<ch:CustomerData>
<ch:UserData>
<ch:Email>person@example.com</ch:Email>
</ch:UserData>
<ch:ContractData>
<ch:CustomerId>12345</ch:CustomerId>
<ch:SiteId>building 1</ch:SiteId>
<ch:ContractId>abcdefg12345</ch:ContractId>
<ch:DeviceId>WS-C6509@C@69000101</ch:DeviceId>
</ch:ContractData>
<ch:SystemInfo>
<ch:Name>Router</ch:Name>
<ch:Contact>
</ch:Contact>
<ch:ContactEmail>user@example.com</ch:ContactEmail>
<ch:ContactPhoneNumber>+1-408-555-1212</ch:ContactPhoneNumber>
<ch:StreetAddress>#1234 Any Street, Any City, Any State, 12345
</ch:StreetAddress>
</ch:SystemInfo>
</ch:CustomerData>
<ch:Device>
<rme:Chassis xmlns:rme="http://www.example.com/rme/4.0">
<rme:Model>WS-C6509</rme:Model>
<rme:HardwareVersion>1.0</rme:HardwareVersion>
<rme:SerialNumber>69000101</rme:SerialNumber>
<rme:AdditionalInformation>
<rme:AD name="PartNumber" value="73-3438-03 01" />
<rme:AD name="SoftwareVersion" value="4.0(20080421:012711)" />
</rme:AdditionalInformation>
</rme:Chassis>
</ch:Device>
</ch:Call Home>
</aml-block:Content>
<aml-block:Attachments>
<aml-block:Attachment type="inline">
<aml-block:Name>show logging</aml-block:Name>
<aml-block:Data encoding="plain">
<![CDATA[Syslog logging: enabled (0 messages dropped, 0 messages
rate-limited, 0 flushes, 0 overruns, xml disabled, filtering disabled)
  Console logging: level debugging, 53 messages logged, xml disabled,
filtering disabled  Monitor logging: level debugging, 0 messages logged,
xml disabled,filtering disabled  Buffer logging: level debugging,
53 messages logged, xml disabled,      filtering disabled  Exception
Logging: size (4096 bytes)  Count and timestamp logging messages: disabled
  Trap logging: level informational, 72 message lines logged
Log Buffer (8192 bytes):
00:00:54: curr is 0x20000
00:00:54: RP: Currently running ROMMON from F2 region
]]>
</aml-block:Data>
</aml-block:Attachment>
</aml-block:Attachments>

```

```

00:01:05: %SYS-5-CONFIG_I: Configured from memory by console
00:01:09: %SYS-5-RESTART: System restarted --Cisco IOS Software,
s72033_rp Software (s72033_rp-ADVENTERPRISEK9_DBG-VM), Experimental
Version 12.2(20070421:012711) Copyright (c) 1986-2007 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Thu 26-Apr-07 15:54 by xxx
Firmware compiled 11-Apr-07 03:34 by integ Build [100]00:01:01: %PFREDUN-6-ACTIVE:
  Initializing as ACTIVE processor for this switch00:01:01: %SYS-3-LOGGER_FLUSHED:
System was paused for 00:00:00 to ensure console debugging output.00:03:00: SP: SP:
  Currently running ROMMON from F1 region00:03:07: %C6K_PLATFORM-SP-4-CONFREG_BREAK
_ENABLED: The default factory setting for config register is 0x2102.It is advisable
to retain 1 in 0x2102 as it prevents returning to ROMMON when break is issued.00:03:18:
%SYS-SP-5-RESTART: System restarted --Cisco IOS Software, s72033_sp Software
(s72033_sp-ADVENTERPRISEK9_DBG-VM), Experimental Version 12.2(20070421:012711)Copyright
(c) 1986-2007 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Thu 26-Apr-07 18:00 by xxx
00:03:18: %SYS-SP-6-BOOTTIME: Time taken to reboot after reload = 339 seconds
00:03:18: %OIR-SP-6-INSPS: Power supply inserted in slot 1
00:03:18: %C6KPWR-SP-4-PSOK: power supply 1 turned on.
00:03:18: %OIR-SP-6-INSPS: Power supply inserted in slot00:01:09: %SSH-5-ENABLED:
  SSH 1.99 has been enabled
00:03:18: %C6KPWR-SP-4-PSOK: power supply 2 turned on.
00:03:18: %C6KPWR-SP-4-PSREDUNDANTMISMATCH: power supplies rated outputs do not match.
00:03:18: %C6KPWR-SP-4-PSREDUNDANTBOTHSUPPLY: in power-redundancy mode, system is
operating on both power supplies.
00:01:10: %CRYPTO-6-ISAKMP_ON_OFF: ISAKMP is OFF
00:01:10: %CRYPTO-6-ISAKMP_ON_OFF: ISAKMP is OFF
00:03:20: %C6KENV-SP-4-FANHIOOUTPUT: Version 2 high-output fan-tray is in effect
00:03:22: %C6KPWR-SP-4-PSNOREDUNDANCY: Power supplies are not in full redundancy,
power usage exceeds lower capacity supply
00:03:26: %FABRIC-SP-5-FABRIC_MODULE_ACTIVE: The Switch Fabric Module in slot 6
became active.
00:03:28: %DIAG-SP-6-RUN_MINIMUM: Module 6: Running Minimal Diagnostics...
00:03:50: %DIAG-SP-6-DIAG_OK: Module 6: Passed Online Diagnostics
00:03:50: %OIR-SP-6-INSCARD: Card inserted in slot 6, interfaces are now online
00:03:51: %DIAG-SP-6-RUN_MINIMUM: Module 3: Running Minimal Diagnostics...
00:03:51: %DIAG-SP-6-RUN_MINIMUM: Module 7: Running Minimal Diagnostics...
00:03:51: %DIAG-SP-6-RUN_MINIMUM: Module 9: Running Minimal Diagnostics...
00:01:51: %MFIB_CONST_RP-6-REPLICATION_MODE_CHANGE: Replication Mode Change Detected.
  Current system replication mode is Ingress
00:04:01: %DIAG-SP-6-DIAG_OK: Module 3: Passed Online Diagnostics
00:04:01: %OIR-SP-6-DOWNGRADE: Fabric capable module 3 not at an appropriate hardware
revision level, and can only run in flowthrough mode
00:04:02: %OIR-SP-6-INSCARD: Card inserted in slot 3, interfaces are now online
00:04:11: %DIAG-SP-6-DIAG_OK: Module 7: Passed Online Diagnostics
00:04:14: %OIR-SP-6-INSCARD: Card inserted in slot 7, interfaces are now online
00:04:35: %DIAG-SP-6-DIAG_OK: Module 9: Passed Online Diagnostics
00:04:37: %OIR-SP-6-INSCARD: Card inserted in slot 9, interfaces are now online
00:00:09: DaughterBoard (Distributed Forwarding Card 3)
Firmware compiled 11-Apr-07 03:34 by integ Build [100]
00:00:22: %SYS-DFC4-5-RESTART: System restarted --
Cisco DCOS Software, c6lc2 Software (c6lc2-SPDBG-VM), Experimental Version 4.0
(20080421:012711)Copyright (c) 1986-2008 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Thu 26-Apr-08 17:20 by xxx
00:00:23: DFC4: Currently running ROMMON from F2 region
00:00:25: %SYS-DFC2-5-RESTART: System restarted --
Cisco IOS Software, c6slc Software (c6slc-SPDBG-VM), Experimental Version 12.2
(20070421:012711)Copyright (c) 1986-2007 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Thu 26-Apr-08 16:40 by username1
00:00:26: DFC2: Currently running ROMMON from F2 region
00:04:56: %DIAG-SP-6-RUN_MINIMUM: Module 4: Running Minimal Diagnostics...
00:00:09: DaughterBoard (Distributed Forwarding Card 3)
Firmware compiled 11-Apr-08 03:34 by integ Build [100]
slot_id is 8
00:00:31: %FLASHFS_HES-DFC8-3-BADCARD: /bootflash:: The flash card seems to

```

```

be corrupted
00:00:31: %SYS-DFC8-5-RESTART: System restarted --
Cisco DCOS Software, c6lc2 Software (c6lc2-SPDBG-VM), Experimental Version 4.0
(20080421:012711)Copyright (c) 1986-2008 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Thu 26-Apr-08 17:20 by username1
00:00:31: DFC8: Currently running ROMMON from S (Gold) region
00:04:59: %DIAG-SP-6-RUN_MINIMUM: Module 2: Running Minimal Diagnostics...
00:05:12: %DIAG-SP-6-RUN_MINIMUM: Module 8: Running Minimal Diagnostics...
00:05:13: %DIAG-SP-6-RUN_MINIMUM: Module 1: Running Minimal Diagnostics...
00:00:24: %SYS-DFC1-5-RESTART: System restarted --
Cisco DCOS Software, c6slc Software (c6slc-SPDBG-VM), Experimental Version 4.0
(20080421:012711)Copyright (c) 1986-2008 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Thu 26-Apr-08 16:40 by username1
00:00:25: DFC1: Currently running ROMMON from F2 region
00:05:30: %DIAG-SP-6-DIAG_OK: Module 4: Passed Online Diagnostics
00:05:31: %SPAN-SP-6-SPAN_EGRESS_REPLICATION_MODE_CHANGE: Span Egress HW
Replication Mode Change Detected. Current replication mode for unused asic
session 0 is Centralized
00:05:31: %SPAN-SP-6-SPAN_EGRESS_REPLICATION_MODE_CHANGE: Span Egress HW
Replication Mode Change Detected. Current replication mode for unused asic
session 1 is Centralized
00:05:31: %OIR-SP-6-INSCARD: Card inserted in slot 4, interfaces are now online
00:06:02: %DIAG-SP-6-DIAG_OK: Module 1: Passed Online Diagnostics
00:06:03: %OIR-SP-6-INSCARD: Card inserted in slot 1, interfaces are now online
00:06:31: %DIAG-SP-6-DIAG_OK: Module 2: Passed Online Diagnostics
00:06:33: %OIR-SP-6-INSCARD: Card inserted in slot 2, interfaces are now online
00:04:30: %XDR-6-XDRIPCNOTIFY: Message not sent to slot 4/0 (4) because of IPC
error timeout. Disabling linecard. (Expected during linecard OIR)
00:06:59: %DIAG-SP-6-DIAG_OK: Module 8: Passed Online Diagnostics
00:06:59: %OIR-SP-6-DOWNGRADE_EARL: Module 8 DFC installed is not identical to
system PFC and will perform at current system operating mode.
00:07:06: %OIR-SP-6-INSCARD: Card inserted in slot 8, interfaces are now online
Router#]]>
</aml-block:Data>
</aml-block:Attachment>
</aml-block:Attachments>
</aml-block:Block>
</soap-env:Body>
</soap-env:Envelope>

```



## CHAPTER 12

# Configuring Rollback

---

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About Rollbacks, on page 139](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for Rollback, on page 139](#)
- [Creating a Checkpoint, on page 140](#)
- [Implementing a Rollback, on page 141](#)
- [Verifying the Rollback Configuration, on page 141](#)

## Information About Rollbacks

The rollback feature allows you to take a snapshot, or user checkpoint, of the Cisco NX-OS configuration and then reapply that configuration to your switch at any point without having to reload the switch. A rollback allows any authorized administrator to apply this checkpoint configuration without requiring expert knowledge of the features configured in the checkpoint.

You can create a checkpoint copy of the current running configuration at any time. Cisco NX-OS saves this checkpoint as an ASCII file which you can use to roll back the running configuration to the checkpoint configuration at a future time. You can create multiple checkpoints to save different versions of your running configuration.

When you roll back the running configuration, you can trigger an atomic rollback. An atomic rollback implements a rollback only if no errors occur.

## Guidelines and Limitations for Rollback

Rollback has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- You can create up to ten checkpoint copies.
- You cannot apply the checkpoint file of one switch into another switch.
- Your checkpoint file names must be 75 characters or less.
- You cannot start a checkpoint filename with the word system.
- You can start a checkpoint filename with the word auto.
- You can name a checkpoint file summary or any abbreviation of the word summary.

- When FCoE is enabled, the checkpoint and configuration rollback functionality are disabled.
- Only one user can perform a checkpoint, rollback, or copy the running configuration to the startup configuration at the same time.
- After you enter the **write erase** and **reload** command, checkpoints are deleted. You can use the clear checkpoint database command to clear out all checkpoint files.
- When checkpoints are created on bootflash, differences with the running-system configuration cannot be performed before performing the rollback, and the system reports “No Changes.”
- Checkpoints are local to a switch.
- Checkpoints that are created using the **checkpoint** and **checkpoint** *checkpoint\_name* commands are present upon a switchover for all switches.
- A rollback to files on bootflash is supported only on files that are created using the **checkpoint** *checkpoint\_name* command and not on any other type of ASCII file.
- Checkpoint names must be unique. You cannot overwrite previously saved checkpoints with the same name.
- Checkpoints are not supported post upgrade or downgrade.
- The Cisco NX-OS commands may differ from the Cisco IOS commands.

## Creating a Checkpoint

You can create up to ten checkpoints of your configuration per switch.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>checkpoint</b> { [ <i>cp-name</i> ] [ <i>description descr</i> ] [ <b>file</b> <i>file-name</i> ]  <b>Example:</b> switch# checkpoint stable	Creates a checkpoint of the running configuration to either a user checkpoint name or a file. The checkpoint name can be any alphanumeric string up to 80 characters but cannot contain spaces. If you do not provide a name, Cisco NX-OS sets the checkpoint name to user-checkpoint-<number> where number is from 1 to 10.  The description can contain up to 80 alphanumeric characters, including spaces.
<b>Step 2</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>no checkpoint</b> <i>cp-name</i>  <b>Example:</b> switch# no checkpoint stable	You can use the <b>no</b> form of the <b>checkpoint</b> command to remove a checkpoint name.  Use the <b>delete</b> command to remove a checkpoint file.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show checkpoint</b> <i>cp-name</i>  <b>Example:</b>	Displays the contents of the checkpoint name.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<b>[ all ]</b>  switch# show checkpoint stable	

## Implementing a Rollback

You can implement a rollback to a checkpoint name or file. Before you implement a rollback, you can view the differences between source and destination checkpoints that reference current or saved configurations.



### Note

If you make a configuration change during an atomic rollback, the rollback will fail.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>show diff rollback-patch {checkpoint <i>src-cp-name</i>   running-config   startup-config   file <i>source-file</i>} {checkpoint <i>dest-cp-name</i>   running-config   startup-config   file <i>dest-file</i>}</b>  <b>Example:</b>  switch# show diff rollback-patch checkpoint stable running-config	Displays the differences between the source and destination checkpoint selections.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>rollback running-config {checkpoint <i>cp-name</i>   file <i>cp-file</i>} atomic</b>  <b>Example:</b>  switch# rollback running-config checkpoint stable	Creates an atomic rollback to the specified checkpoint name or file if no errors occur.

### Example

The following example shows how to create a checkpoint file and then implement an atomic rollback to a user checkpoint name:

```
switch# checkpoint stable
switch# rollback running-config checkpoint stable atomic
```

## Verifying the Rollback Configuration

Use the following commands to verify the rollback configuration:

Command	Purpose
<b>show checkpoint</b> <i>name</i> [ <b>all</b> ]	Displays the contents of the checkpoint name.
<b>show checkpoint all</b> [ <b>user</b>   <b>system</b> ]	Displays the contents of all checkpoints in the current switch. You can limit the displayed checkpoints to user or system-generated checkpoints.
<b>show checkpoint summary</b> [ <b>user</b>   <b>system</b> ]	Displays a list of all checkpoints in the current switch. You can limit the displayed checkpoints to user or system-generated checkpoints.
<b>show diff rollback-patch</b> { <b>checkpoint</b> <i>src-cp-name</i>   <b>running-config</b>   <b>startup-config</b>   <b>file</b> <i>source-file</i> } { <b>checkpoint</b> <i>dest-cp-name</i>   <b>running-config</b>   <b>startup-config</b>   <b>file</b> <i>dest-file</i> }	Displays the differences between the source and destination checkpoint selections.
<b>show rollback log</b> [ <b>exec</b>   <b>verify</b> ]	Displays the contents of the rollback log.



**Note** Use the **clear checkpoint database** command to delete all checkpoint files.





## CHAPTER 13

# Configuring DNS

---

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About DNS Client](#) , on page 143
- [Prerequisites for DNS Clients](#), on page 144
- [Licensing Requirements for DNS Clients](#), on page 144
- [Default Settings for DNS Clients](#), on page 144
- [Configuring DNS Clients](#), on page 144

## Information About DNS Client

If your network devices require connectivity with devices in networks for which you do not control name assignment, you can assign device names that uniquely identify your devices within the entire internetwork using the domain name server (DNS). DNS uses a hierarchical scheme for establishing hostnames for network nodes, which allows local control of the segments of the network through a client-server scheme. The DNS system can locate a network device by translating the hostname of the device into its associated IP address.

On the Internet, a domain is a portion of the naming hierarchy tree that refers to general groupings of networks based on the organization type or geography. Domain names are pieced together with periods (.) as the delimiting characters. For example, Cisco is a commercial organization that the Internet identifies by a com domain, so its domain name is cisco.com. A specific hostname in this domain, the File Transfer Protocol (FTP) system, for example, is identified as ftp.cisco.com.

## Name Servers

Name servers keep track of domain names and know the parts of the domain tree for which they have complete information. A name server may also store information about other parts of the domain tree. To map domain names to IP addresses in Cisco NX-OS, you must first identify the hostnames, then specify a name server, and enable the DNS service.

Cisco NX-OS allows you to statically map IP addresses to domain names. You can also configure Cisco NX-OS to use one or more domain name servers to find an IP address for a hostname.

## DNS Operation

A name server handles client-issued queries to the DNS server for locally defined hosts within a particular zone as follows:

- An authoritative name server responds to DNS user queries for a domain name that is under its zone of authority by using the permanent and cached entries in its own host table. If the query is for a domain name that is under its zone of authority but for which it does not have any configuration information, the authoritative name server replies that no such information exists.
- A name server that is not configured as the authoritative name server responds to DNS user queries by using information that it has cached from previously received query responses. If no router is configured as the authoritative name server for a zone, queries to the DNS server for locally defined hosts receive nonauthoritative responses.

Name servers answer DNS queries (forward incoming DNS queries or resolve internally generated DNS queries) according to the forwarding and lookup parameters configured for the specific domain.

## High Availability

Cisco NX-OS supports stateless restarts for the DNS client. After a reboot or supervisor switchover, Cisco NX-OS applies the running configuration.

## Prerequisites for DNS Clients

The DNS client has the following prerequisites:

- You must have a DNS name server on your network.

## Licensing Requirements for DNS Clients

The following table shows the licensing requirements for this feature:

Product	Licence Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	DNS requires no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the Cisco NX-OS system images and is provided at no extra charge to you. For a complete explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the <i>Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide</i> .

## Default Settings for DNS Clients

The following table shows the default settings for DNS client parameters.

Parameter	Default
DNS client	Enabled

## Configuring DNS Clients

You can configure the DNS client to use a DNS server on your network.

**Before you begin**

- Ensure that you have a domain name server on your network.

**Procedure**

	<b>Command or Action</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configuration terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# vrf context managment	Specifies a configurable virtual and routing (VRF) name.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config)# <b>ip host</b> <i>name address1</i> [ <i>address2... address6</i> ]	Defines up to six static hostname-to-address mappings in the host name cache.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>ip domain name</b> <i>name</i> [ <b>use-vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> ]	<p>Defines the default domain name server that Cisco NX-OS uses to complete unqualified hostnames. You can optionally define a VRF that Cisco NX-OS uses to resolve this domain name server if it cannot be resolved in the VRF that you configured this domain name under.</p> <p>Cisco NX-OS appends the default domain name to any host name that does not contain a complete domain name before starting a domain-name lookup.</p>
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>ip domain-list</b> <i>name</i> [ <b>use-vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> ]	<p>Defines additional domain name servers that Cisco NX-OS can use to complete unqualified hostnames. You can optionally define a VRF that Cisco NX-OS uses to resolve this domain name server if it cannot be resolved in the VRF that you configured this domain name under.</p> <p>Cisco NX-OS uses each entry in the domain list to append that domain name to any hostname that does not contain a complete domain name before starting a domain-name lookup. Cisco NX-OS continues this for each entry in the domain list until it finds a match.</p>
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>ip name-server</b> <i>server-address1</i> [ <i>server-address2... server-address6</i> ] [ <b>use-vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> ]	<p>Defines up to six name servers. The address can be either an IPv4 address or an IPv6 address.</p> <p>You can optionally define a VRF that Cisco NX-OS uses to reach this name server if it cannot be reached in the VRF that you configured this name server under.</p>
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>ip domain-lookup</b>	Enables DNS-based address translation. This feature is enabled by default.
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show hosts</b>	Displays information about DNS.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 9</b>	switch(config)# <b>exit</b>	Exits configuration mode and returns to EXEC mode.
<b>Step 10</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure a default domain name and enable DNS lookup:

```
switch# config t
switch(config)# vrf context management
switch(config)# ip domain-name mycompany.com
switch(config)# ip name-server 172.68.0.10
switch(config)# ip domain-lookup
```



## CHAPTER 14

# Configuring SNMP

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About SNMP, on page 147](#)
- [Licensing Requirements for SNMP, on page 151](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for SNMP, on page 151](#)
- [Default SNMP Settings, on page 151](#)
- [Configuring SNMP, on page 152](#)
- [Disabling SNMP, on page 164](#)
- [Verifying the SNMP Configuration, on page 164](#)

## Information About SNMP

The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is an application-layer protocol that provides a message format for communication between SNMP managers and agents. SNMP provides a standardized framework and a common language used for the monitoring and management of devices in a network.

## SNMP Functional Overview

The SNMP framework consists of three parts:

- An SNMP manager—The system used to control and monitor the activities of network devices using SNMP.
- An SNMP agent—The software component within the managed device that maintains the data for the device and reports these data, as needed, to managing systems. The Cisco Nexus device supports the agent and MIB. To enable the SNMP agent, you must define the relationship between the manager and the agent.
- A managed information base (MIB)—The collection of managed objects on the SNMP agent



### Note

Cisco NX-OS does not support SNMP sets for Ethernet MIBs.

The Cisco Nexus device supports SNMPv1, SNMPv2c, and SNMPv3. Both SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c use a community-based form of security.

Cisco NX-OS supports SNMP over IPv6.

SNMP is defined in RFC 3410 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3410>), RFC 3411 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3411>), RFC 3412 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3412>), RFC 3413 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3413>), RFC 3414 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3414>), RFC 3415 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3415>), RFC 3416 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3416>), RFC 3417 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3417>), RFC 3418 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3418>), and RFC 3584 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3584>).

## SNMP Notifications

A key feature of SNMP is the ability to generate notifications from an SNMP agent. These notifications do not require that requests be sent from the SNMP manager. Notifications can indicate improper user authentication, restarts, the closing of a connection, loss of connection to a neighbor router, or other significant events.

Cisco NX-OS generates SNMP notifications as either traps or informs. A trap is an asynchronous, unacknowledged message sent from the agent to the SNMP managers listed in the host receiver table. Informs are asynchronous messages sent from the SNMP agent to the SNMP manager which the manager must acknowledge receipt of.

Traps are less reliable than informs because the SNMP manager does not send any acknowledgment when it receives a trap. The switch cannot determine if the trap was received. An SNMP manager that receives an inform request acknowledges the message with an SNMP response protocol data unit (PDU). If the Cisco Nexus device never receives a response, it can send the inform request again.

You can configure Cisco NX-OS to send notifications to multiple host receivers.

## SNMPv3

SNMPv3 provides secure access to devices by a combination of authenticating and encrypting frames over the network. The security features provided in SNMPv3 are the following:

- Message integrity—Ensures that a packet has not been tampered with in-transit.
- Authentication—Determines the message is from a valid source.
- Encryption—Scrambles the packet contents to prevent it from being seen by unauthorized sources.

SNMPv3 provides for both security models and security levels. A security model is an authentication strategy that is set up for a user and the role in which the user resides. A security level is the permitted level of security within a security model. A combination of a security model and a security level determines which security mechanism is employed when handling an SNMP packet.

## Security Models and Levels for SNMPv1, v2, and v3

The security level determines if an SNMP message needs to be protected from disclosure and if the message needs to be authenticated. The various security levels that exist within a security model are as follows:

- noAuthNoPriv—Security level that does not provide authentication or encryption. This level is not supported for SNMPv3.
- authNoPriv—Security level that provides authentication but does not provide encryption.
- authPriv—Security level that provides both authentication and encryption.

Three security models are available: SNMPv1, SNMPv2c, and SNMPv3. The security model combined with the security level determine the security mechanism applied when the SNMP message is processed.

**Table 24: SNMP Security Models and Levels**

Model	Level	Authentication	Encryption	What Happens
v1	noAuthNoPriv	Community string	No	Uses a community string match for authentication.
v2c	noAuthNoPriv	Community string	No	Uses a community string match for authentication.
v3	authNoPriv	HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA	No	Provides authentication based on the Hash-Based Message Authentication Code (HMAC) Message Digest 5 (MD5) algorithm or the HMAC Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA).
v3	authPriv	HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA	DES	Provides authentication based on the HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA algorithms. Provides Data Encryption Standard (DES) 56-bit encryption in addition to authentication based on the Cipher Block Chaining (CBC) DES (DES-56) standard.

## User-Based Security Model

SNMPv3 User-Based Security Model (USM) refers to SNMP message-level security and offers the following services:

- Message integrity—Ensures that messages have not been altered or destroyed in an unauthorized manner and that data sequences have not been altered to an extent greater than can occur nonmaliciously.
- Message origin authentication—Confirms that the claimed identity of the user who received the data was originated.
- Message confidentiality—Ensures that information is not made available or disclosed to unauthorized individuals, entities, or processes.

SNMPv3 authorizes management operations only by configured users and encrypts SNMP messages.

Cisco NX-OS uses two authentication protocols for SNMPv3:

- HMAC-MD5-96 authentication protocol
- HMAC-SHA-96 authentication protocol

Cisco NX-OS uses Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) as one of the privacy protocols for SNMPv3 message encryption and conforms with RFC 3826.

The **priv** option offers a choice of DES or 128-bit AES encryption for SNMP security encryption. The **priv** option and the **aes-128** token indicates that this privacy password is for generating a 128-bit AES key. The AES priv password can have a minimum of eight characters. If the passphrases are specified in clear text, you can specify a maximum of 64 characters. If you use the localized key, you can specify a maximum of 130 characters.

**Note**

For an SNMPv3 operation using the external AAA server, you must use AES for the privacy protocol in user configuration on the external AAA server.

## CLI and SNMP User Synchronization

SNMPv3 user management can be centralized at the Access Authentication and Accounting (AAA) server level. This centralized user management allows the SNMP agent in Cisco NX-OS to leverage the user authentication service of the AAA server. Once user authentication is verified, the SNMP PDUs are processed further. Additionally, the AAA server is also used to store user group names. SNMP uses the group names to apply the access/role policy that is locally available in the switch.

Any configuration changes made to the user group, role, or password results in database synchronization for both SNMP and AAA.

Cisco NX-OS synchronizes user configuration in the following ways:

- The **auth** passphrase specified in the **snmp-server user** command becomes the password for the CLI user.
- The password specified in the **username** command becomes the **auth** and **priv** passphrases for the SNMP user.
- If you create or delete a user using either SNMP or the CLI, the user is created or deleted for both SNMP and the CLI.
- User-role mapping changes are synchronized in SNMP and the CLI.
- Role changes (deletions or modifications from the CLI) are synchronized to SNMP.

**Note**

When you configure passphrase/password in localized key/encrypted format, Cisco NX-OS does not synchronize the user information (passwords, rules, etc.).



## Group-Based SNMP Access



**Note** Because a group is a standard SNMP term used industry-wide, roles are referred to as groups in this SNMP section.

SNMP access rights are organized by groups. Each group in SNMP is similar to a role through the CLI. Each group is defined with three accesses: read access, write access, and notification access. Each access can be enabled or disabled within each group.

You can begin communicating with the agent once your username is created, your roles are set up by your administrator, and you are added to the roles.

## Licensing Requirements for SNMP

This feature does not require a license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the Cisco NX-OS system images and is provided at no extra charge to you. For a complete explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the *Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*.

## Guidelines and Limitations for SNMP

Cisco NX-OS supports read-only access to Ethernet MIBs.

For more information about supported MIBs, see the following URL:

<http://www.cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml>

Cisco NX-OS does not support the SNMPv3 noAuthNoPriv security level.

## Default SNMP Settings

**Table 25: Default SNMP Parameters**

Parameters	Default
license notifications	Enabled
linkUp/Down notification type	ietf-extended

# Configuring SNMP

## Configuring SNMP Users



### Note

The commands used to configure SNMP users in Cisco NX-OS are different from those used to configure users in Cisco IOS.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<pre>switch(config)# snmp-server user name [auth {md5   sha} passphrase [auto] [priv [aes-128] passphrase] [engineID id] [localizedkey]]</pre> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# snmp-server user Admin auth sha abcd1234 priv abcdefgh</pre>	<p>Configures an SNMP user with authentication and privacy parameters.</p> <p>The passphrase can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 64 characters.</p> <p>If you use the <b>localizedkey</b> keyword, the passphrase can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 130 characters.</p> <p>The engineID format is a 12-digit, colon-separated decimal number.</p>
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) <b>switch# show snmp user</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config) # show snmp user</pre>	Displays information about one or more SNMP users.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure an SNMP user:

```
switch# config t
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# snmp-server user Admin auth sha abcd1234 priv abcdefgh
```

## Enforcing SNMP Message Encryption

You can configure SNMP to require authentication or encryption for incoming requests. By default, the SNMP agent accepts SNMPv3 messages without authentication and encryption. When you enforce privacy, Cisco NX-OS responds with an authorization error for any SNMPv3 PDU request that uses a security level parameter of either **noAuthNoPriv** or **authNoPriv**.

Use the following command in global configuration mode to enforce SNMP message encryption for a specific user:

Command	Purpose
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server user</b> <i>name</i> <b>enforcePriv</b>	Enforces SNMP message encryption for this user.

Use the following command in global configuration mode to enforce SNMP message encryption for all users:

Command	Purpose
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server globalEnforcePriv</b>	Enforces SNMP message encryption for all users.

## Assigning SNMPv3 Users to Multiple Roles

After you configure an SNMP user, you can assign multiple roles for the user.



### Note

Only users who belong to a network-admin role can assign roles to other users.

Command	Purpose
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server user</b> <i>name</i> <i>group</i>	Associates this SNMP user with the configured user role.

## Creating SNMP Communities

You can create SNMP communities for SNMPv1 or SNMPv2c.

Command	Purpose
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server community</b> <i>name</i> <i>group</i> { <b>ro</b>   <b>rw</b> }	Creates an SNMP community string.

## Filtering SNMP Requests

You can assign an access list (ACL) to a community to filter incoming SNMP requests. If the assigned ACL allows the incoming request packet, SNMP processes the request. If the ACL denies the request, SNMP drops the request and sends a system message.

Create the ACL with the following parameters:

- Source IP address
- Destination IP address

- Source port
- Destination port
- Protocol (UDP or TCP)

The ACL applies to both IPv4 and IPv6 over UDP and TCP. After creating the ACL, assign the ACL to the SNMP community.


**Tip**

For more information about creating ACLs, see the NX-OS security configuration guide for the Cisco Nexus Series software that you are using.

Use the following command in global configuration mode to assign an IPv4 or IPv6 ACL to an SNMPv3 community to filter SNMP requests:

Command	Purpose
<pre>switch(config)# snmp-server community name [use-ipv4acl ipv4acl-name] [use-ipv6acl ipv6acl-name]  switch(config)# snmp-server community public use-ipv4acl myacl</pre>	Assigns an IPv4 or IPv6 ACL to an SNMPv3 community to filter SNMP requests.

## Configuring SNMP Notification Receivers

You can configure Cisco NX-OS to generate SNMP notifications to multiple host receivers.

You can configure a host receiver for SNMPv1 traps in a global configuration mode.

Command	Purpose
<pre>switch(config)# snmp-server host ip-address traps version 1 community [udp_port number]</pre>	Configures a host receiver for SNMPv1 traps. The <i>ip-address</i> can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The community can be any alphanumeric string up to 255 characters. The UDP port number range is from 0 to 65535.

You can configure a host receiver for SNMPv2c traps or informs in a global configuration mode.

Command	Purpose
<pre>switch(config)# snmp-server host ip-address {traps   informs} version 2c community [udp_port number]</pre>	Configures a host receiver for SNMPv2c traps or informs. The <i>ip-address</i> can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The community can be any alphanumeric string up to 255 characters. The UDP port number range is from 0 to 65535.

You can configure a host receiver for SNMPv3 traps or informs in a global configuration mode.

Command	Purpose
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server host</b> <i>ip-address</i> {traps   informs} version 3 {auth   noauth   priv} <i>username</i> [ <i>udp_port number</i> ]	Configures a host receiver for SNMPv2c traps or informs. The <i>ip-address</i> can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The username can be any alphanumeric string up to 255 characters. The UDP port number range is from 0 to 65535.



**Note** The SNMP manager must know the user credentials (authKey/PrivKey) based on the SNMP engineID of the Cisco Nexus device to authenticate and decrypt the SNMPv3 messages.

The following example shows how to configure a host receiver for an SNMPv1 trap:

```
switch(config)# snmp-server host 192.0.2.1 traps version 1 public
```

The following example shows how to configure a host receiver for an SNMPv2 inform:

```
switch(config)# snmp-server host 192.0.2.1 informs version 2c public
```

The following example shows how to configure a host receiver for an SNMPv3 inform:

```
switch(config)# snmp-server host 192.0.2.1 informs version 3 auth NMS
```

## Configuring SNMP Notification Receivers with VRFs

You can configure Cisco NX-OS to use a configured VRF to reach the host receiver. SNMP adds entries into the cExtSnmpTargetVrfTable of the CISCO-SNMP-TARGET-EXT-MIB when you configure the VRF reachability and filtering options for an SNMP notification receiver.



**Note** You must configure the host before configuring the VRF reachability or filtering options.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch# <b>snmp-server host</b> <i>ip-address use-vrf vrf_name</i> [ <i>udp_port number</i> ]	Configures SNMP to use the selected VRF to communicate with the host receiver. The IP address can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The VRF name can be any alphanumeric string up to 255 characters. The UDP port number range is from 0 to 65535. This command adds an entry into the ExtSnmpTargetVrfTable of the CISCO-SNMP-TARGET-EXT-MB.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure the SNMP server host with IP address 192.0.2.1 to use the VRF named "Blue:"

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# snmp-server host 192.0.2.1 use-vrf Blue
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Filtering SNMP Notifications Based on a VRF

You can configure Cisco NX-OS filter notifications based on the VRF in which the notification occurred.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>snmp-server host ip-address filter-vrf vrf_name [udp_port number]</b>	Filters notifications to the notification host receiver based on the configured VRF. The IP address can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The VRF name can be any alphanumeric string up to 255 characters. The UDP port number range is from 0 to 65535.  This command adds an entry into the ExtSnmpTargetVrfTable of the CISCO-SNMP-TARGET-EXT-MB.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure filtering of SNMP notifications based on a VRF:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# snmp-server host 192.0.2.1 filter-vrf Red
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Configuring a Source Interface for Sending Out All SNMP Notifications

You can configure SNMP to use the IP address of an interface as the source IP address for notifications. When a notification is generated, its source IP address is based on the IP address of this configured interface.



### Note

Configuring the source interface IP address for outgoing trap packets does not guarantee that the device will use the same interface to send the trap. The source interface IP address defines the source address inside of the SNMP trap and the connection is opened with the address of the egress interface as source.

Complete the following steps to configure a source interface for sending out all SNMP notifications:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<pre>switch(config) # snmp-server source-interface {traps   informs} if-type if-number</pre> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config) # snmp-server source-interface traps ethernet 2/1</pre>	Configures a source interface for sending out SNMPv2c traps or informs. Use ? to determine the supported interface types.

### Example

This example shows how to configure a source interface to sending out SNMPv2c traps:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # snmp-server source-interface traps ethernet 2/1
```

### What to do next

To display information about configured source interfaces, enter the **show snmp source-interface** command.

## Configuring a Host Receiver for SNMP Notifications



### Note

This configuration overrides the global source interface configuration.

Complete the following steps to configure a host receiver on a source interface responsible for receiving all SNMP notifications:

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<pre>switch(config) # snmp-server host ip-address source-interface if-type if-number [udp_port number]</pre> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config) # snmp-server host 192.0.2.1 source-interface traps ethernet 2/1</pre>	Configures a host receiver for SNMPv2c traps or informs. The <i>ip-address</i> can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address. Use ? to determine the supported interface types.

**Example**

To the following example configures a source interface responsible for receiving all SNMP notifications:

```
switch# config t
switch(config) # snmp-server host 192.0.2.1 source-interface ethernet 2/1
```

**What to do next**

To display information about configured source interface, enter the **show snmp source-interface** command.

## Configuring SNMP for Inband Access

You can configure SNMP for inband access using the following:

- Using SNMP v2 without context—You can use a community that is mapped to a context. In this case, the SNMP client does not need to know about the context.
- Using SNMP v2 with context—The SNMP client needs to specify the context by specifying a community; for example, <community>@<context>.
- Using SNMP v3—You can specify the context.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>switch# configuration terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<pre>switch(config)# snmp-server context context-name vrf vrf-name</pre>	Maps an SNMP context to the management VRF or default VRF. Custom VRFs are not supported. The names can be any alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.



	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config)# <b>snmp-server community</b> <i>community-name</i> <b>group</b> <i>group-name</i>	Maps an SNMPv2c community to an SNMP context and identifies the group to which the community belongs. The names can be any alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config)# <b>snmp-server mib community-map</b> <i>community-name</i> <b>context</b> <i>context-name</i>	Maps an SNMPv2c community to an SNMP context. The names can be any alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.

### Example

The following SNMPv2 example shows how to map a community named snmpdefault to a context:

```
switch# config t
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# snmp-server context def vrf default
switch(config)# snmp-server community snmpdefault group network-admin
switch(config)# snmp-server mib community-map snmpdefault context def
switch(config)#
```

The following SNMPv2 example shows how to configure and inband access to the community comm which is not mapped:

```
switch# config t
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# snmp-server context def vrf default
switch(config)# snmp-server community comm group network-admin
switch(config)#
```

The following SNMPv3 example shows how to use a v3 username and password:

```
switch# config t
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# snmp-server context def vrf default
switch(config)#
```

## Enabling SNMP Notifications

You can enable or disable notifications. If you do not specify a notification name, Cisco NX-OS enables all notifications.



### Note

The **snmp-server enable traps** CLI command enables both traps and informs, depending on the configured notification host receivers.

The following table lists the CLI commands that enable the notifications for Cisco NX-OS MIBs.

**Table 26: Enabling SNMP Notifications**

MIB	Related Commands
All notifications	<b>snmp-server enable traps</b>

<b>MIB</b>	<b>Related Commands</b>
BRIDGE-MIB	snmp-server enable traps bridge newroot snmp-server enable traps bridge topologychange
CISCO-AAA-SERVER-MIB	snmp-server enable traps aaa
ENTITY-MIB, CISCO-ENTITY-FRU-CONTROL-MIB, CISCO-ENTITY-SENSOR-MIB	snmp-server enable traps entity snmp-server enable traps entity fru
CISCO-LICENSE-MGR-MIB	snmp-server enable traps license
IF-MIB	snmp-server enable traps link
CISCO-PSM-MIB	snmp-server enable traps port-security
SNMPv2-MIB	snmp-server enable traps snmp snmp-server enable traps snmp authentication
CISCO-FCC-MIB	snmp-server enable traps fcc
CISCO-DM-MIB	snmp-server enable traps fcdomain
CISCO-NS-MIB	snmp-server enable traps fcns
CISCO-FCS-MIB	snmp-server enable traps fcs discovery-complete snmp-server enable traps fcs request-reject
CISCO-FDMI-MIB	snmp-server enable traps fdmi
CISCO-FSPF-MIB	snmp-server enable traps fspf
CISCO-PSM-MIB	snmp-server enable traps port-security
CISCO-RSCN-MIB	snmp-server enable traps rscn snmp-server enable traps rscn els snmp-server enable traps rscn ils
CISCO-ZS-MIB	snmp-server enable traps zone snmp-server enable traps zone default-zone-behavior-change snmp-server enable traps zone enhanced-zone-db-change snmp-server enable traps zone merge-failure snmp-server enable traps zone merge-success snmp-server enable traps zone request-reject snmp-server enable traps zone unsupp-mem

MIB	Related Commands
<b>CISCO-CONFIG-MAN-MIB</b>  <b>Note</b> Supports no MIB objects except the following notification: ccmCLIRunningConfigChanged	<b>snmp-server enable traps config</b>



**Note** The license notifications are enabled by default.

To enable the specified notification in the global configuration mode, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server enable traps</b>	Enables all SNMP notifications.
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server enable traps aaa</b> [server-state-change]	Enables the AAA SNMP notifications.
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server enable traps entity</b> [fru]	Enables the ENTITY-MIB SNMP notifications.
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server enable traps license</b>	Enables the license SNMP notification.
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server enable traps port-security</b>	Enables the port security SNMP notifications.
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server enable traps snmp</b> [authentication]	Enables the SNMP agent notifications.

## Configuring Link Notifications

You can configure which linkUp/linkDown notifications to enable on a device. You can enable the following types of linkUp/linkDown notifications:

- **cieLinkDown**—Enables the Cisco extended link state down notification.
- **cieLinkUp**—Enables the Cisco extended link state up notification.
- **cisco-xcvr-mon-status-chg**—Enables the Cisco interface transceiver monitor status change notification.
- **delayed-link-state-change**—Enables the delayed link state change.
- **extended-linkUp**—Enables the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) extended link state up notification.
- **extended-linkDown**—Enables the IETF extended link state down notification.
- **linkDown**—Enables the IETF Link state down notification.
- **linkUp**—Enables the IETF Link state up notification.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b>  switch# configure terminal switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>snmp-server enable traps link [cieLinkDown   cieLinkUp   cisco-xcvr-mon-status-chg   delayed-link-state-change]   extended-linkUp   extended-linkDown   linkDown   linkUp]</b>  <b>Example:</b>  switch(config)# snmp-server enable traps link cieLinkDown	Enables the link SNMP notifications.

## Disabling Link Notifications on an Interface

You can disable linkUp and linkDown notifications on an individual interface. You can use these limit notifications on a flapping interface (an interface that transitions between up and down repeatedly).

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>type slot/port</i>	Specifies the interface to be changed.  <b>Note</b> If this is a QSFP+ GEM or a breakout port, the <i>port</i> syntax is <i>QSFP-module/port</i> .
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-if)# <b>no snmp trap link-status</b>	Disables SNMP link-state traps for the interface. This feature is enabled by default.

## Enabling One-Time Authentication for SNMP over TCP

You can enable a one-time authentication for SNMP over a TCP session.

Command	Purpose
switch(config)# <b>snmp-server tcp-session [auth]</b>	Enables a one-time authentication for SNMP over a TCP session. This feature is disabled by default.

## Assigning SNMP Switch Contact and Location Information

You can assign the switch contact information, which is limited to 32 characters (without spaces), and the switch location.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configuration terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>snmp-server contact</b> <i>name</i>	Configures sysContact, the SNMP contact name.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config)# <b>snmp-server location</b> <i>name</i>	Configures sysLocation, the SNMP location.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show snmp</b>	Displays information about one or more destination profiles.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves this configuration change.

## Configuring the Context to Network Entity Mapping

You can configure an SNMP context to map to a logical network entity, such as a protocol instance or VRF.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configuration terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>snmp-server context</b> <i>context-name</i> [ <b>instance</b> <i>instance-name</i> ] [ <b>vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> ] [ <b>topology</b> <i>topology-name</i> ]	Maps an SNMP context to a protocol instance, VRF, or topology. The names can be any alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config)# <b>snmp-server mib community-map</b> <i>community-name</i> <b>context</b> <i>context-name</i>	Maps an SNMPv2c community to an SNMP context. The names can be any alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>no snmp-server context</b> <i>context-name</i> [ <b>instance</b> <i>instance-name</i> ] [ <b>vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> ] [ <b>topology</b> <i>topology-name</i> ]	Deletes the mapping between an SNMP context and a protocol instance, VRF, or topology. The names can be any alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.  <b>Note</b> Do not enter an instance, VRF, or topology to delete a context mapping. If you use the <b>instance</b> , <b>vrf</b> , or <b>topology</b> keywords, you configure a mapping between the context and a zero-length string.

## Modifying the AAA Synchronization Time

You can modify how long Cisco NX-OS holds the synchronized user configuration.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch# configure terminal switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>snmp-server aaa-user cache-timeout <i>seconds</i></b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config)# snmp-server aaa-user cache-timeout 1200	Configures how long the AAA synchronized user configuration stays in the local cache. The range is from 1 to 86400 seconds. The default value is 3600 seconds.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Disabling SNMP

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> switch# configure terminal switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>switch(config) # no snmp-server protocol enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> no snmp-server protocol enable	Disables SNMP.  SNMP is disabled by default.

## Verifying the SNMP Configuration

To display SNMP configuration information, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
show snmp	Displays the SNMP status.

Command	Purpose
<b>show snmp community</b>	Displays the SNMP community strings.
<b>show snmp engineID</b>	Displays the SNMP engineID.
<b>show snmp group</b>	Displays SNMP roles.
<b>show snmp sessions</b>	Displays SNMP sessions.
<b>show snmp trap</b>	Displays the SNMP notifications enabled or disabled.
<b>show snmp user</b>	Displays SNMPv3 users.







## CHAPTER 15

# Configuring RMON

---

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About RMON, on page 167](#)
- [Configuration Guidelines and Limitations for RMON, on page 168](#)
- [Configuring RMON, on page 168](#)
- [Verifying the RMON Configuration, on page 170](#)
- [Default RMON Settings, on page 170](#)

## Information About RMON

RMON is an Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) standard monitoring specification that allows various network agents and console systems to exchange network monitoring data. The Cisco NX-OS supports RMON alarms, events, and logs to monitor Cisco Nexus device.

An RMON alarm monitors a specific management information base (MIB) object for a specified interval, triggers an alarm at a specified threshold value (threshold), and resets the alarm at another threshold value. You can use alarms with RMON events to generate a log entry or an SNMP notification when the RMON alarm triggers.

RMON is disabled by default and no events or alarms are configured in Cisco Nexus devices. You can configure your RMON alarms and events by using the CLI or an SNMP-compatible network management station.

## RMON Alarms

You can set an alarm on any MIB object that resolves into an SNMP INTEGER type. The specified object must be an existing SNMP MIB object in standard dot notation (for example, 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.17 represents ifOutOctets.17).

When you create an alarm, you specify the following parameters:

- MIB object to monitor
- Sampling interval—The interval that the Cisco Nexus device uses to collect a sample value of the MIB object.
- Sample type—Absolute samples take the current snapshot of the MIB object value. Delta samples take two consecutive samples and calculate the difference between them.

- Rising threshold—The value at which the Cisco Nexus device triggers a rising alarm or resets a falling alarm.
- Falling threshold—The value at which the Cisco Nexus device triggers a falling alarm or resets a rising alarm.
- Events—The action that the Cisco Nexus device takes when an alarm (rising or falling) triggers.



**Note**

Use the `hcalarms` option to set an alarm on a 64-bit integer MIB object.

For example, you can set a delta type rising alarm on an error counter MIB object. If the error counter delta exceeds this value, you can trigger an event that sends an SNMP notification and logs the rising alarm event. This rising alarm does not occur again until the delta sample for the error counter drops below the falling threshold.



**Note**

The falling threshold must be less than the rising threshold.

## RMON Events

You can associate a particular event to each RMON alarm. RMON supports the following event types:

- SNMP notification—Sends an SNMP risingAlarm or fallingAlarm notification when the associated alarm triggers.
- Log—Adds an entry in the RMON log table when the associated alarm triggers.
- Both—Sends an SNMP notification and adds an entry in the RMON log table when the associated alarm triggers.

You can specify a different even for a falling alarm and a rising alarm.

## Configuration Guidelines and Limitations for RMON

RMON has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- You must configure an SNMP user and a notification receiver to use the SNMP notification event type.
- You can only configure an RMON alarm on a MIB object that resolves to an integer.

## Configuring RMON

### Configuring RMON Alarms

You can configure RMON alarms on any integer-based SNMP MIB object.

You can optionally specify the following parameters:

- The eventnumber to trigger if the rising or falling threshold exceeds the specified limit.
- The owner of the alarm.

Ensure you have configured an SNMP user and enabled SNMP notifications.

### Before you begin

Ensure you have configured an SNMP user and enabled SNMP notifications.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>rmon alarm</b> <i>index mib-object sample-interval {absolute   delta} rising-threshold value [event-index] falling-threshold value [event-index] [owner name]</i>	Creates an RMON alarm. The value range is from –2147483647 to 2147483647. The owner name can be any alphanumeric string.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config)# <b>rmon hcalarm</b> <i>index mib-object sample-interval {absolute   delta} rising-threshold-high value rising-threshold-low value [event-index] falling-threshold-high value falling-threshold-low value [event-index] [owner name] [storagetype type]</i>	Creates an RMON high-capacity alarm. The value range is from –2147483647 to 2147483647. The owner name can be any alphanumeric string.  The storage type range is from 1 to 5.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>show rmon {alarms   hcalarms}</b>	Displays information about RMON alarms or high-capacity alarms.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves this configuration change.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure RMON alarms:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# rmon alarm 1 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.17.83886080 5 delta rising-threshold 5 1
falling-threshold 0 owner test
switch(config)# exit
switch# show rmon alarms
Alarm 1 is active, owned by test
Monitors 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.17.83886080 every 5 second(s)
Taking delta samples, last value was 0
Rising threshold is 5, assigned to event 1
Falling threshold is 0, assigned to event 0
```

```
On startup enable rising or falling alarm
```

## Configuring RMON Events

You can configure RMON events to associate with RMON alarms. You can reuse the same event with multiple RMON alarms.

Ensure you have configured an SNMP user and enabled SNMP notifications.

### Before you begin

Ensure that you have configured an SNMP user and enabled SNMP notifications.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>rmon event</b> <i>index</i> [ <b>description</b> <i>string</i> ] [ <b>log</b> ] [ <b>trap</b> ] [ <b>owner</b> <i>name</i> ]	Configures an RMON event. The description string and owner name can be any alphanumeric string.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show rmon</b> { <b>alarms</b>   <b>hcalarms</b> }	Displays information about RMON alarms or high-capacity alarms.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves this configuration change.

## Verifying the RMON Configuration

Use the following commands to verify the RMON configuration information:

Command	Purpose
<b>show rmon alarms</b>	Displays information about RMON alarms.
<b>show rmon events</b>	Displays information about RMON events.
<b>show rmon hcalarms</b>	Displays information about RMON hcalarms.
<b>show rmon logs</b>	Displays information about RMON logs.

## Default RMON Settings

The following table lists the default settings for RMON parameters.

*Table 27: Default RMON Parameters*

Parameters	Default
Alarms	None configured.
Events	None configured.





## CHAPTER 16

# Configuring SPAN

---

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About SPAN, on page 173](#)
- [SPAN Sources, on page 173](#)
- [Characteristics of Source Ports, on page 174](#)
- [SPAN Destinations, on page 174](#)
- [Characteristics of Destination Ports, on page 175](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for SPAN, on page 175](#)
- [Creating or Deleting a SPAN Session, on page 176](#)
- [Configuring an Ethernet Destination Port, on page 176](#)
- [Configuring MTU Truncation for Each SPAN Session, on page 178](#)
- [Configuring Fibre Channel Destination Port, on page 179](#)
- [Configuring Source Ports, on page 180](#)
- [Configuring Source Port Channels, VSANs, or VLANs, on page 181](#)
- [Configuring the Description of a SPAN Session, on page 182](#)
- [Activating a SPAN Session, on page 182](#)
- [Suspending a SPAN Session, on page 183](#)
- [Troubleshooting SPAN session issues, on page 183](#)
- [Displaying SPAN Information, on page 184](#)

## Information About SPAN

The Switched Port Analyzer (SPAN) feature (sometimes called port mirroring or port monitoring) selects network traffic for analysis by a network analyzer. The network analyzer can be a Cisco SwitchProbe, a Fibre Channel Analyzer, or other Remote Monitoring (RMON) probes.

## SPAN Sources

SPAN sources refer to the interfaces from which traffic can be monitored. The Cisco Nexus device supports Ethernet, Fibre Channel, virtual Fibre Channel, port channels, SAN port channels, VSANs and VLANs as SPAN sources. With VLANs or VSANs, all supported interfaces in the specified VLAN or VSAN are included as SPAN sources. You can choose the SPAN traffic in the ingress direction, the egress direction, or both directions for Ethernet, Fibre Channel, and virtual Fibre Channel source interfaces:

- Ingress source (Rx)—Traffic entering the device through this source port is copied to the SPAN destination port.
- Egress source (Tx)—Traffic exiting the device through this source port is copied to the SPAN destination port.

**Note**

Fibre Channel ports and VSAN ports cannot be configured as ingress source ports in a SPAN session.

## Characteristics of Source Ports

A source port, also called a monitored port, is a switched interface that you monitor for network traffic analysis. The switch supports any number of ingress source ports (up to the maximum number of available ports on the switch) and any number of source VLANs or VSANs.

A source port has these characteristics:

- Can be of Ethernet, Fibre Channel, virtual Fibre Channel, port channel, SAN port channel, VSAN or VLAN port type.
- Cannot be a destination port.
- Can be configured with a direction (ingress, egress, or both) to monitor. For VLAN and VSAN sources, the monitored direction can only be ingress and applies to all physical ports in the group. The RX/TX option is not available for VLAN or VSAN SPAN sessions.
- Can be in the same or different VLANs or VSANs.
- For VLAN or VSAN SPAN sources, all active ports in the source VLAN or VSAN are included as source ports.

**Note**

- If some of the FEX ports are being used by a SPAN session as source ports, the remaining FEX ports cannot be a part of a different SPAN session.
- The maximum number of source ports per SPAN session is 128 ports.
- The maximum number of SPAN sessions supported on the Nexus 5000 Series and Nexus 5500 Series switches is 4.
- The maximum number of SPAN sessions supported on the Nexus 5600 Series and Nexus 6000 Series switches is 16.

## SPAN Destinations

SPAN destinations refer to the interfaces that monitors source ports. The Cisco Nexus Series device supports Ethernet and Fibre Channel interfaces as SPAN destinations.



Starting with Cisco NX-OS Release 7.2(0)N1(1), HIF and virtual ethernet (Veth) ports as SPAN destination is supported.

Source SPAN	Dest SPAN
Ethernet	Ethernet
Fibre Channel	Fibre Channel
Fibre Channel	Ethernet (FCoE)
Virtual Fibre Channel	Fibre Channel
Virtual Fibre Channel	Ethernet (FCoE)

## Characteristics of Destination Ports

Each local SPAN session must have a destination port (also called a monitoring port) that receives a copy of traffic from the source ports, VSANs, or VLANs. A destination port has these characteristics:

- Can be any physical port. Source Ethernet, FCoE, and Fibre Channel ports cannot be destination ports.
- Cannot be a source port.
- Cannot be a port channel or SAN port channel group.
- Does not participate in spanning tree while the SPAN session is active.
- Is excluded from the source list and is not monitored if it belongs to a source VLAN of any SPAN session.
- Receives copies of sent and received traffic for all monitored source ports.
- The FEX interface cannot be a span destination.

## Guidelines and Limitations for SPAN

- The **switchport monitor rate-limit interface** command is not applicable on the Nexus 5500 device. The rate limit for SPAN traffic takes place at the SPAN source port on a Nexus 5500 device. Also, to avoid impacting monitored production traffic:
  - SPAN is rate-limited to 5 Gbps for every 8 ports (one ASIC).
  - RX-SPAN is rate-limited to 0.71 Gbps per port when the RX-traffic on the port exceeds 5 Gbps.
- The switch supports four active SPAN sessions. When you configure more than two SPAN sessions, the first two sessions are active. During startup, the order of active sessions is reversed; the last two sessions are active. For example, if you configured ten sessions 1 to 10 where 1 and 2 are active, after a reboot, sessions 9 and 10 will be active. To enable deterministic behavior, explicitly suspend sessions 3 to 10 with the **monitor session session-number shut** command.

- Starting from Cisco NX-OS Release 7.3(0)N1(1), a host interface (HIF) port can be a destination port for local SPAN sessions. However, a HIF port cannot be a destination port for SPAN-on-Latency, SPAN-on-Drop and ERSPAN sessions.
- An interface cannot be added as a source interface in the same direction in more than one SPAN session.
- Connecting SPAN destination ports to a switch device is not supported.
- SPAN is not supported on a management interface.
- Some protocols such as LLDP, DCBX, LACP, CDP are offloaded to FEX CPU. Hence the parent switch never sees native frames for these protocols and uses MTS messaging to inform the parent CPU.  
Moreover, since SPAN is done on the parent fabric interface, native packets for the protocols that are handled by FEX CPU are not seen in the SPAN.
- Local SPAN/SPAN on Drop/SPAN on Latency is not aware of VPC.
- The following is the limitation for HIF and Virtual Ethernet (Veth) as SPAN destination:
  - Multi-destination SPAN is not supported. If HIF/VETH port is a destination, the monitor session must have single destination.

## Creating or Deleting a SPAN Session

You create a SPAN session by assigning a session number using the **monitor session** command. If the session already exists, any additional configuration information is added to the existing session.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>monitor session</b> <i>session-number</i>	Enters the monitor configuration mode. New session configuration is added to the existing session configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure a SPAN monitor session:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # monitor session 2
switch(config) #
```

## Configuring an Ethernet Destination Port

You can configure an Ethernet interface as a SPAN destination port.



**Note** The SPAN destination port can only be a physical port on the switch.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>interface ethernet slot/port</b>	Enters interface configuration mode for the Ethernet interface with the specified slot and port.  <b>Note</b> If this is a QSFP+ GEM or a breakout port, the <i>port</i> syntax is <i>QSFP-module/port</i> .  <b>Note</b> To enable the <b>switchport monitor</b> command on virtual ethernet ports, you can use the <b>interface vethernet slot/port</b> command.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-if)# <b>switchport monitor</b>	Enters monitor mode for the specified Ethernet interface. Priority flow control is disabled when the port is configured as a SPAN destination.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Reverts to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	switch(config)# <b>monitor session session-number</b>	Enters monitor configuration mode for the specified SPAN session.
<b>Step 6</b>	switch(config-monitor)# <b>destination interface ethernet slot/port</b>	Configures the Ethernet SPAN destination port.  <b>Note</b> If this is a QSFP+ GEM or a breakout port, the <i>port</i> syntax is <i>QSFP-module/port</i> .  <b>Note</b> To enable the virtual ethernet port as destination interface in the monitor configuration, you can use the <b>destination interface vethernet slot/port</b> command.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure an Ethernet SPAN destination port (HIF):

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet100/1/24
switch(config-if)# switchport monitor
switch(config-if)# exit
switch(config)# monitor session 1
```

```
switch(config-monitor)# destination interface ethernet100/1/24
switch(config-monitor)#
```

The following example shows how to configure a virtual ethernet (VETH) SPAN destination port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface vethernet10
switch(config-if)# switchport monitor
switch(config-if)# exit
switch(config)# monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor)# destination interface vethernet10
switch(config-monitor)#
```

## Configuring MTU Truncation for Each SPAN Session

To reduce the SPAN traffic bandwidth, you can configure the maximum bytes allowed for each replicated packet in a SPAN session. This value is called the maximum transmission unit (MTU) truncation size. Any SPAN packet larger than the configured size is truncated to the configured size.



**Note** MTU Truncation is not supported for SPAN-on-Drop sessions.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>monitor session</b> <i>session-number</i>	Enters monitor configuration mode and specifies the SPAN session for which the MTU truncation size is to be configured.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-monitor) # [ <b>no</b> ] <b>mtu</b>	Configures the MTU truncation size for packets in the specified SPAN session. The range is from 64 to 1518 bytes.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config-monitor) # <b>show monitor session</b> <i>session-number</i>	Displays the status of SPAN sessions, including the configuration status of MTU truncation, the maximum bytes allowed for each packet per session, and the modules on which MTU truncation is and is not supported.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config-monitor) # <b>copy running-config</b> startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to configure MTU truncation for a SPAN session:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # monitor session 3
switch(config-monitor) # mtu
```

```
switch(config-monitor) # copy running-config startup-config
switch(config-monitor) #
```

## Configuring Fibre Channel Destination Port



**Note** The SPAN destination port can only be a physical port on the switch.

You can configure a Fibre Channel port as a SPAN destination port.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>interface fc slot/port</b>	Enters interface configuration mode for the specified Fibre Channel interface selected by the slot and port values.  <b>Note</b> If this is a QSFP+ GEM or a breakout port, the <i>port</i> syntax is <i>QSFP-module/port</i> .
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-if)# <b>switchport mode SD</b>	Sets the interface to SPAN destination (SD) mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config-if)# <b>switchport speed 1000</b>	Sets the interface speed to 1000. The auto speed option is not allowed.
<b>Step 5</b>	switch(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Reverts to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	switch(config)# <b>monitor session session-number</b>	Enters the monitor configuration mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	switch(config-monitor)# <b>destination interface fc slot/port</b>	Configures the Fibre Channel destination port.  <b>Note</b> If this is a QSFP+ GEM or a breakout port, the <i>port</i> syntax is <i>QSFP-module/port</i> .

### Example

The following example shows how to configure an Ethernet SPAN destination port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface fc 2/4
switch(config-if)# switchport mode SD
switch(config-if)# switchport speed 1000
switch(config-if)# exit
```

```
switch(config)# monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor)# destination interface fc 2/4
```

## Configuring Source Ports

A source port can be an Ethernet port, port channel, Fiber Channel ports, SAN port channel, VLAN, or a VSAN port. It cannot be a destination port.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>monitor session</b> <i>session-number</i>	Enters monitor configuration mode for the specified monitoring session.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-monitor) # <b>source interface type</b> <i>slot/port [rx   tx   both]</i>	<p>Adds an Ethernet SPAN source port and specifies the traffic direction in which to duplicate packets. You can enter a range of Ethernet, Fibre Channel, or virtual Fibre Channel ports. You can specify the traffic direction to duplicate as ingress (Rx), egress (Tx), or both. By default, the direction is both.</p> <p><b>Note</b> If this is a QSFP+ GEM or a breakout port, the <i>port</i> syntax is <i>QSFP-module/port</i>.</p>

### Example

The following example shows how to configure an Ethernet SPAN source port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor)# source interface ethernet 1/16
switch(config-monitor)#
```

The following example shows how to configure a Fibre Channel SPAN source port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor)# source interface fc 2/1
switch(config-monitor)#
```

The following example shows how to configure a virtual Fibre Channel SPAN source port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor)# source interface vfc 129
switch(config-monitor)#
```

# Configuring Source Port Channels, VSANs, or VLANs

You can configure the source channels for a SPAN session. These ports can be port channels, SAN port channels, VSANs and VLANs. The monitored direction can be ingress, egress, or both and applies to all physical ports in the group.

## Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>monitor session</b> <i>session-number</i>	Enters monitor configuration mode for the specified SPAN session.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-monitor) # <b>source {interface</b> <b>{port-channel   san-port-channel}</b> <i>channel-number [rx   tx   both]   vlan</i> <i>vlan-range   vsan vsan-range }</i>	Configures port channel, SAN port channel, VLAN, or VSAN sources. For VLAN or VSAN sources, the monitored direction is implicit.

## Example

The following example shows how to configure a port channel SPAN source:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor)# source interface port-channel 1 rx
switch(config-monitor)# source interface port-channel 3 tx
switch(config-monitor)# source interface port-channel 5 both
switch(config-monitor)#
```

This example shows how to configure a SAN port channel SPAN source:

```
switch(config-monitor)#switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor)# source interface san-port-channel 3 rx
switch(config-monitor)#
```

The following example shows how to configure a VLAN SPAN source:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor)# source vlan 1
switch(config-monitor)#
```

switch(config-monitor)#This example shows how to configure a VSAN SPAN source:

```
switch(config-monitor)#switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor)# source vsan 1
switch(config-monitor)#
```

## Configuring the Description of a SPAN Session

For ease of reference, you can provide a descriptive name for a SPAN session.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>monitor session</b> <i>session-number</i>	Enters monitor configuration mode for the specified SPAN session.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config-monitor) # <b>description</b> <i>description</i>	Creates a descriptive name for the SPAN session.

### Example

The following example shows how to configure a SPAN session description:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor) # description monitoring ports eth2/2-eth2/4
switch(config-monitor) #
```

## Activating a SPAN Session

The default is to keep the session state shut. You can open a session that duplicates packets from sources to destinations.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>no monitor session</b> {all   <i>session-number</i> } <b>shut</b>	Opens the specified SPAN session or all sessions.

### Example

The following example shows how to activate a SPAN session:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # no monitor session 3 shut
```



## Suspending a SPAN Session

By default, the session state is **shut**.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config) # <b>monitor session {all   session-number} shut</b>	Suspends the specified SPAN session or all sessions.

### Example

The following example shows how to suspend a SPAN session:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # monitor session 3 shut
switch(config) #
```

## Troubleshooting SPAN session issues

If a SPAN session is down, do the following:

- Check if one of the destination port is operational by performing the following:
  - Use the **show running interface *interface*** command and check if the switchport monitor is configured.
  - Use the **show interface *interface*** command and check if the destination interface shows the status as "admin up".
- Use the **show interface *interface*** command to check if one of the source port is operational and if the source interface shows the status as "admin up".

## Troubleshooting SPAN session with large number of source ports issues

*Table 28: Troubleshooting SPAN session with large number of source ports*

Problem Description	Solution	Recommendation
---------------------	----------	----------------

When a SPAN session is configured with maximum supported range of 128 source ports at one go, the configuration session may encounter "Service not responding" message.	Remove the ports and configure them in smaller ranges (example, 1 to 48) and then use the <b>shutdown</b> and <b>no shutdown</b> command on the session.	Configure the individual ports in small ranges (example, 1 to 48).
After using the <b>shutdown</b> and then <b>no shutdown</b> on a range of SPAN session configured with maximum of ports (example, 128), some sessions do not come up.	Remove some ports from the specific SPAN session. Add the removed ports back to the same SPAN session and then use the <b>no shutdown</b> command.	Use the <b>shutdown</b> command on each port.
After creating a SPAN session with 128 source ports, the <b>no shutdown</b> command displays a "Service not responding" message.	Use the <b>no shutdown</b> command repeatedly to bring up the SPAN session.	

## Displaying SPAN Information

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>show monitor</b> [session {all   session-number   range session-range} [brief]]	Displays the SPAN configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to display SPAN session information:

```
switch# show monitor
SESSION  STATE      REASON                DESCRIPTION
-----  -
2        up         The session is up
3        down      Session suspended
4        down      No hardware resource
```

The following example shows how to display SPAN session details:

```
switch# show monitor session 2
      session 2
-----
type           : local
state          : up
acl-name       : acl1
source intf    :
    rx         : fc3/1
    tx         : fc3/1
    both       : fc3/1
source VLANs   :
    rx         :
source VSANs   :
    rx         : 1
destination ports : Eth3/1
```





## CHAPTER 17

# Configuring ERSPAN

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About ERSPAN, on page 187](#)
- [Licensing Requirements for ERSPAN, on page 190](#)
- [Prerequisites for ERSPAN, on page 190](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for ERSPAN, on page 190](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for ERSPAN Type III, on page 191](#)
- [Default Settings for ERSPAN, on page 191](#)
- [Configuring ERSPAN, on page 192](#)
- [Configuration Examples for ERSPAN, on page 199](#)
- [Additional References, on page 201](#)

## Information About ERSPAN

The Cisco NX-OS system supports the Encapsulated Remote Switching Port Analyzer (ERSPAN) feature on both source and destination ports. ERSPAN transports mirrored traffic over an IP network. The traffic is encapsulated at the source router and is transferred across the network. The packet is decapsulated at the destination router and then sent to the destination interface.

ERSPAN consists of an ERSPAN source session, routable ERSPAN generic routing encapsulation (GRE)-encapsulated traffic, and an ERSPAN destination session. You can separately configure ERSPAN source sessions and destination sessions on different switches.

## ERSPAN Source Sessions

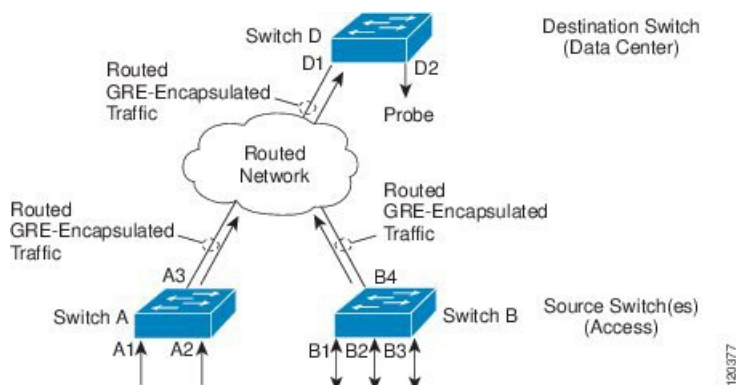
An ERSPAN source session is defined by the following:

- A session ID.
- A list of source ports, source VLANs, or source VSANs to be monitored by the session.
- An ERSPAN flow ID.
- Optional attributes related to the GRE envelope such as IP TOS and TTL.
- Destination IP address.
- Virtual Routing and Forwarding tables.

ERSPAN source sessions do not copy ERSPAN GRE-encapsulated traffic from source ports. Each ERSPAN source session can have ports, VLANs, or VSANs as sources. However, there are some limitations. For more information, see Guidelines and Limitations for ERSPAN.

The following figure shows an example ERSPAN configuration.

**Figure 1: ERSPAN Configuration**



## Monitored Traffic

By default, ERSPAN monitors all traffic, including multicast and bridge protocol data unit (BPDU) frames.

The direction of the traffic that ERSPAN monitors depends on the source, as follows:

- For a source port, the ERSPAN can monitor ingress, egress, or both ingress and egress traffic.
- For a source VLAN or source VSAN, the ERSPAN can monitor only ingress traffic.

## ERSPAN Types

Cisco NX-OS Release 6.1 and later releases support ERSPAN Type II (default) and Type III. All previous Cisco NX-OS releases support only ERSPAN Type II.

ERSPAN Type III supports all of the ERSPAN Type II features and functionality and adds these enhancements:

- Provides timestamp information in the ERSPAN Type III header that can be used to calculate packet latency among edge, aggregate, and core switches.
- Identifies possible traffic sources using the ERSPAN Type III header fields.
- Provides the ability to configure timestamp granularity to determine how the clock manager synchronizes the ERSPAN timers.
- Beginning with Cisco NX-OS Release 7.1(1)N1(1), ERSPAN Type III provides configurable switch IDs that can be used to identify traffic flows across multiple switches.

**Table 29: Differences between ERSPAN Type II and ERSPAN Type III**

Attribute	Type II	Type III
Timestamp	NA	Timestamp provided.

Attribute	Type II	Type III
Platform-specific info	NA	Platform-specific info is required for Nexus 5500, Nexus 5600 and Nexus 6000 platforms.
Source Port Identification at Termination Switch	Limited identification.	Detailed identification. Provision of switch IDs.

## ERSPAN Sources

The interfaces from which traffic can be monitored are called ERSPAN sources. Sources designate the traffic to monitor and whether to copy ingress, egress, or both directions of traffic. ERSPAN sources include the following:

- Ethernet ports and port channels.
- VLANs—When a VLAN is specified as an ERSPAN source, all supported interfaces in the VLAN are ERSPAN sources.

ERSPAN source ports have the following characteristics:

- A port configured as a source port cannot also be configured as a destination port.
- ERSPAN does not monitor any packets that are generated by the supervisor, regardless of their source.

## Truncated ERSPAN

Truncated ERSPAN can be used to reduce the amount of fabric or network bandwidth used in sending ERSPAN packets.

The default is no truncation so switches or routers receiving large ERSPAN packets might drop these oversized packets.



### Note

Do not enable the truncated ERSPAN feature if the destination ERSPAN router is a Cisco Nexus 6001 or Cisco Nexus 6004 switch because the Cisco Nexus 6000 Series switch drops these truncated packets.

## Multiple ERSPAN Sessions

Although you can create up to 18 ERSPAN sessions, you can run only four ERSPAN or SPAN sessions at one time. You can shut down any unused ERSPAN sessions.

For information about shutting down ERSPAN sessions, see [Shutting Down or Activating an ERSPAN Session, on page 197](#).

# Licensing Requirements for ERSPAN

The following table shows the licensing requirements for this feature:

## Prerequisites for ERSPAN

- You must first configure the Ethernet interfaces for ports on each device to support the desired ERSPAN configuration. For more information, see the Interfaces configuration guide for your platform.

## Guidelines and Limitations for ERSPAN

- A maximum of 16 active sessions are supported. They can be ERSPAN sessions only or a mixture of ERSPAN and SPAN sessions.
- The maximum number of ports for each ERSPAN session is 128.
- The maximum number of VLANs per session is 32.
- You can have source ports, source VLANs, and source VSANs in one ERSPAN session.
- ERSPAN can monitor ingress, egress, or both ingress and egress traffic on a source port and only ingress traffic on source VLANs or source VSANs as long as the VLAN is not mapped to a VSAN. ERSPAN cannot monitor egress traffic on source VLANs and VSANs.
- To bring up an ERSPAN monitor session, you must first configure a global origin address using the **monitor erspan origin ip-address** *ip-address* **global** command.
- Source ports and source VLANs can be in the same ERSPAN session.



- ERSPAN traffic can exit the switch through a Layer 2 interface, Layer 3 interface, port channel, or FabricPath core port.
- A destination IP address of a remote switch cannot be reached through a virtual Ethernet port or FEX port. This functionality is not supported.
- Configuring a FEX interface as a destination port for ERSPAN is not supported.
- ERSPAN traffic is not load balanced if the reachability to a destination IP address is a Layer 3 ECMP or a port channel. In the case of ECMP, the ERSPAN traffic is sent to only one next-hop router or one member of the port channel.
- ERSPAN supports Fast Ethernet, Gigabit Ethernet, TenGigabit Ethernet, and port channel interfaces as source ports for a source session.
- When a session is configured through the ERSPAN configuration commands, the session ID and the session type cannot be changed. In order to change them, you must first use the no version of the configuration command to remove the session and then reconfigure the session.
- ERSPAN traffic might compete with regular data traffic.
- ERSPAN traffic is assigned to the QoS class-default system class (qos-group 0).
- To ensure that data traffic is prioritized over ERSPAN traffic, you can create a QoS system class with prioritization above the class-default system class on the ERSPAN destination port.  
On Layer 3 networks, ERSPAN traffic can be marked with a the desired Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) value using the ip dscp command. By default, ERSPAN traffic is marked with a DSCP value of 0.
- The **rate limit** command is not supported.
- ERSPAN is not supported on a management interface.
- You cannot use the same source interface in multiple SPAN or ERSPAN sessions.

## Guidelines and Limitations for ERSPAN Type III

ERSPAN Type III has the following guidelines and limitations:

- Only IPv4 networks are supported by ERSPAN Type III. IPv6 networks are not supported by ERSPAN Type III but IPv6 packets can be captured by ERSPAN.
- To calculate packet latency across ports, ERSPAN timestamp should be taken from the Precision Time Protocol (PTP) clock and the PTP feature must be enabled on the switch.

## Default Settings for ERSPAN

The following table lists the default settings for ERSPAN parameters.

Table 30: Default ERSPAN Parameters

Parameters	Default
ERSPAN sessions	Created in the shut state.

# Configuring ERSPAN

## Configuring an ERSPAN Source Session

The ERSPAN source session defines the session configuration parameters and the ports or VLANs to be monitored. This section describes how to configure an ERSPAN source session.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configuration terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# config t switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>monitor session <i>span-session-number</i> type {erspan-source   local}</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# monitor session 1 type erspan-source switch(config-erspan-src)#</pre>	<p>Defines an ERSPAN source session using the session ID and the session type, and places the command in ERSPAN monitor source session configuration mode.</p> <p>The <i>span-session-number</i> argument range is from 1 to 1024. The same session number cannot be used more than once.</p> <p>The session IDs for source sessions are in the same global ID space, so each session ID is globally unique.</p> <p>The session ID (configured by the <i>span-session-number</i> argument) and the session type (configured by the <b>erspan-source</b> keyword) cannot be changed once entered. To change session ID or session type, use the <b>no</b> version of the command to remove the session and then recreate the session through the command with a new session ID or a new session type.</p>
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>(Optional) description <i>erspan_session_description</i></b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# description source1</pre>	<p>Describes the ERSPAN source session.</p> <p>The <i>erspan_session_description</i> argument can be up to 32 characters and cannot contain special characters or spaces.</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>source interface</b> { <i>ethernet slot/chassis number</i>   <i>portchannel number</i> }  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src) # source interface eth 1/1</pre>	Associates the ERSPAN source session number with the source ports (1-255).
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>source vlan</b> <i>number</i>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src) # source vlan 1</pre>	Associates the ERSPAN source session number with the VLANs (1-4096).
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>source vsan</b> <i>number</i>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src) # source vsan 1</pre>	Specifies the VSAN ID number. The range is 1 to 4093.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>destination ip</b> <i>ip-address</i>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src) # destination ip 192.0.2.2</pre>	Configures the destination IP address in the ERSPAN session. Only one destination IP address is supported per ERSPAN source session.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>erspan-id</b> <i>flow-id</i>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src) # erspan-id 5</pre>	Configures the flow ID to identify the ERSPAN flow. The range is from 1 to 1023.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>vrf</b> { <i>vrf-name</i>   <b>default</b> }  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src) # vrf default</pre>	Configures the VRF to use instead of the global routing table. You can use a VRF that you have specifically configured or the default VRF.
<b>Step 10</b>	(Optional) <b>ip ttl</b> <i>ttl-number</i>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src) # ip ttl 5</pre>	Configures the IP time-to-live (TTL) value of the packets in the ERSPAN traffic. Valid values are from 1 to 255. The default value is 255.
<b>Step 11</b>	(Optional) <b>ip dscp</b> <i>dscp_value</i>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src) # ip dscp 42</pre>	Configures the IP Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) value of the packets in the ERSPAN traffic. Valid values are from 0 to 63. The default value is 0.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>no shut</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src) # no shut</pre>	Enables the ERSPAN source session. By default, the session is created in the shut state.
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src) # exit switch(config) # exit</pre>	Updates the configuration and exits ERSPAN source session configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 14</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Configuring an ERSPAN Type III Source Session

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configuration terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# config t switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>monitor erspan switch-id <i>switch-id</i></b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# monitor erspan switch-id 1009</pre>	Configures the ERSPAN global switch ID. The switch ID is applicable for all ERSPAN Type III sessions. Default value is 0.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>monitor erspan granularity 1588</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# monitor erspan granularity 1588</pre>	Specifies granularity for all ERSPAN Type III sessions. 1588 (in seconds or nanoseconds) is the only option available and it is the default value.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>monitor session <i>span-session-number</i> type {erspan-source   local}</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# monitor session 1 type erspan-source switch(config-erspan-src)#</pre>	<p>Defines an ERSPAN source session using the session ID and the session type, and places the command in ERSPAN monitor source session configuration mode.</p> <p>The <i>span-session-number</i> argument range is from 1 to 1024. The same session number cannot be used more than once.</p> <p>The session IDs for source sessions are in the same global ID space, so each session ID is globally unique for both session types.</p> <p>The session ID (configured by the <i>span-session-number</i> argument) and the session type (configured by the <b>erspan-source</b> keyword) cannot be changed once entered. To change session ID or session type, use the <b>no</b> version of the command to remove the session and then recreate the session through the</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		command with a new session ID or a new session type.
<b>Step 5</b>	Required: <b>header-type version</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src) # header-type 3</pre>	Changes the ERSPAN source session from Type II to Type III. <b>Note</b> You can use the <b>no</b> form of this command to change an ERSPAN source session from Type III to Type II.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) <b>description</b> <i>erspan_session_description</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src) # description source1</pre>	Describes the ERSPAN source session. The <i>erspan_session_description</i> argument can be up to 240 characters and cannot contain special characters or spaces.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>source interface { ethernet slot/chassis number   portchannel number }</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src) # source interface eth 1/1</pre>	Associates the ERSPAN source session number with the source ports (1-255).
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>source vlan number</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src) # source vlan 1</pre>	Associates the ERSPAN source session number with the VLANs (1-4096).
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>source vsan number</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src) # source vsan 1</pre>	On Cisco Nexus 5000 Series switches, specifies the VSAN ID number. The range is 1 to 4093. On Cisco Nexus 5500 Series switches, you cannot configure source VSANs.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>destination ip ip-address</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src) # destination ip 192.0.2.2</pre>	Configures the destination IP address in the ERSPAN session. Only one destination IP address is supported per ERSPAN source session.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>erspan-id flow-id</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src) # erspan-id 5</pre>	Configures the flow ID to identify the ERSPAN flow. The range is from 1 to 1023.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>vrf { vrf-name   default }</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src) # vrf default</pre>	Configures the VRF to use instead of the global routing table. You can use a VRF that you have specifically configured or the default VRF.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 13</b>	(Optional) <b>ip ttl</b> <i>ttl-number</i>  <b>Example:</b> <code>switch(config-erspan-src)# ip ttl 5</code>	Configures the IP time-to-live (TTL) value of the packets in the ERSPAN traffic. Valid values are from 1 to 255. The default value is 255.
<b>Step 14</b>	(Optional) <b>ip dscp</b> <i>dscp_value</i>  <b>Example:</b> <code>switch(config-erspan-src)# ip dscp 42</code>	Configures the IP Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) value of the packets in the ERSPAN traffic. Valid values are from 0 to 63. The default value is 0.
<b>Step 15</b>	<b>no shut</b>  <b>Example:</b> <code>switch(config-erspan-src)# no shut</code>	Enables the ERSPAN source session. By default, the session is created in the shut state.  <b>Note</b> On Cisco Nexus 5000 Series switches, only two ERSPAN source sessions can be running simultaneously. On Cisco Nexus 5500 Series switches, up to four source sessions can be running simultaneously.
<b>Step 16</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> <code>switch(config-erspan-src)# exit</code> <code>switch(config)# exit</code>	Updates the configuration and exits ERSPAN source session configuration mode.
<b>Step 17</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b> <code>switch(config-erspan-src)# copy running-config startup-config</code>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Configuring Truncated ERSPAN

You can configure an MTU size for the ERSPAN traffic to reduce the amount of fabric or network bandwidth used in sending ERSPAN packets.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> <code>switch&gt; enable</code>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b>	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	switch# configure terminal switch(config)#	
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>monitor session <i>erspan_session_number</i> type {erspan-source   local}</b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>switch(config)# monitor session 1 type erspan-source switch(config-erspan-src)#</pre>	<p>Defines an ERSPAN source session using the session ID and the session type, and places the command in ERSPAN monitor source session configuration mode.</p> <p>The span-session-number argument range is from 1 to 1024. The same session number cannot be used more than once.</p> <p>The session IDs for source sessions are in the same global ID space, so each session ID is globally unique for both session types.</p> <p>The session ID (configured by the span-session number argument) and the session type (configured by the erspan-source keyword) cannot be changed once entered. To change session ID or session type, use the no version of the command to remove the session and then re-create the session through the command with a new session ID or a new session type.</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>mtu <i>mtu-value</i></b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# mtu 64</pre>	<p>Defines the maximum transmission unit (MTU) truncation size for ERSPAN packets. Valid values are from 64 to 1518.</p> <p>The default is no truncation enabled.</p>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>switch(config-mon-erspan-src)# exit</pre>	Updates the configuration and exits ERSPAN source session configuration mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>(Optional) copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Shutting Down or Activating an ERSPAN Session

You can shut down ERSPAN sessions to discontinue the copying of packets from sources to destinations. Because only a specific number of ERSPAN sessions can be running simultaneously, you can shut down a session to free hardware resources to enable another session. By default, ERSPAN sessions are created in the shut state.

You can enable ERSPAN sessions to activate the copying of packets from sources to destinations. To enable an ERSPAN session that is already enabled but operationally down, you must first shut it down and then enable it. You can shut down and enable the ERSPAN session states with either a global or monitor configuration mode command.

## Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configuration terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch# configuration terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>monitor session {session-range   all} shut</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# monitor session 3 shut</pre>	Shuts down the specified ERSPAN sessions. The session range is from 1 to 48. By default, sessions are created in the shut state.  <b>Note</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Cisco Nexus 5000 and 5500 platforms, two sessions can run simultaneously.</li> <li>• In Cisco Nexus 5600 and 6000 platforms, 16 sessions can run simultaneously.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>no monitor session {session-range   all} shut</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# no monitor session 3 shut</pre>	Resumes (enables) the specified ERSPAN sessions. The session range is from 1 to 48. By default, sessions are created in the shut state. Only two sessions can be running at a time.  <b>Note</b> If a monitor session is enabled but its operational status is down, then to enable the session, you must first specify the <b>monitor session shut</b> command followed by the <b>no monitor session shut</b> command.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>monitor session session-number type erspan-source</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config)# monitor session 3 type erspan-source switch(config-erspan-src)#</pre>	Enters the monitor configuration mode for the ERSPAN source type. The new session configuration is added to the existing session configuration.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>monitor session session-number type erspan-destination</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# monitor session 3 type erspan-destination</pre>	Enters the monitor configuration mode for the ERSPAN destination type.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>shut</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# shut</pre>	Shuts down the ERSPAN session. By default, the session is created in the shut state.



	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>no shut</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-erspan-src)# no shut	Enables the ERSPAN session. By default, the session is created in the shut state.
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) <b>show monitor session all</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-erspan-src)# show monitor session all	Displays the status of ERSPAN sessions.
<b>Step 9</b>	(Optional) <b>show running-config monitor</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-erspan-src)# show running-config monitor	Displays the running ERSPAN configuration.
<b>Step 10</b>	(Optional) <b>show startup-config monitor</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-erspan-src)# show startup-config monitor	Displays the ERSPAN startup configuration.
<b>Step 11</b>	(Optional) <b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-erspan-src)# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

## Verifying the ERSPAN Configuration

Use the following command to verify the ERSPAN configuration information:

Command	Purpose
<b>show monitor session</b> {all   <i>session-number</i>   range <i>session-range</i> }	Displays the ERSPAN session configuration.
<b>show running-config monitor</b>	Displays the running ERSPAN configuration.
<b>show startup-config monitor</b>	Displays the ERSPAN startup configuration.

## Configuration Examples for ERSPAN

### Configuration Example for an ERSPAN Source Session

The following example shows how to configure an ERSPAN source session:

```

switch# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# monitor session 1 type erspan-source
switch(config-erspan-src)# description source1
switch(config-erspan-src)# source interface ethernet 1/1
switch(config-erspan-src)# source vlan 1
switch(config-erspan-src)# source vspan 1
switch(config-erspan-src)# destination ip 192.0.2.2
switch(config-erspan-src)# erspan-id 1
switch(config-erspan-src)# vrf default
switch(config-erspan-src)# ip ttl 5
switch(config-erspan-src)# ip dscp 5
switch(config-erspan-src)# no shut
switch(config-erspan-src)# exit
switch(config)# copy running-config startup config

```

## Configuration Example for an ERSPAN Type III Source Session

The following example shows how to configure an ERSPAN Type III source session:

```

switch# config t
switch(config)# monitor erspan origin ip-address 10.0.0.1 global
switch(config)# monitor session 1 type erspan-source
switch(config-erspan-src)# header-type 3
switch(config-erspan-src)# erspan-id 1
switch(config-erspan-src)# vrf default
switch(config-erspan-src)# destination ip 10.0.0.1
switch(config-erspan-src)# source interface ethernet 1/22 both
switch(config-erspan-src)# mtu 100
switch(config-erspan-src)# no shut
switch(config-erspan-src)# exit
switch(config)# exit
switch# show monitor session all

```

## Configuration Example for an IP Address as the Source for an ERSPAN Session

This example shows how to configure an IP address as the source for an ERSPAN session:

```

switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# monitor erspan origin ip-address 192.0.2.1
switch(config)# exit
switch(config)# copy running-config startup config

```

## Configuration Example for Truncated ERSPAN

This example shows how to configure truncated ERSPAN:

```

switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# monitor session 1 type erspan-source
switch(config-erspan-src)# mtu 64
switch(config-mon-erspan-src)# exit
switch(config)# copy running-config startup config

```

# Additional References

## Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
ERSPAN commands: complete command syntax, command modes, command history, defaults, usage guidelines, and examples	<i>Cisco Nexus NX-OS System Management Command Reference</i> for your platform.





## CHAPTER 18

# Configuring NTP

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About NTP, on page 203](#)
- [Licensing Requirements, on page 205](#)
- [Prerequisites for NTP, on page 205](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for NTP, on page 205](#)
- [Default Settings for NTP, on page 206](#)
- [Configuring NTP, on page 206](#)
- [Verifying the NTP Configuration, on page 215](#)
- [Configuration Examples for NTP, on page 216](#)

## Information About NTP

### Information About the NTP Server

The Network Time Protocol (NTP) synchronizes the time of day among a set of distributed time servers and clients so that you can correlate events when you receive system logs and other time-specific events from multiple network devices. NTP uses the User Datagram Protocol (UDP) as its transport protocol.

All NTP communications use Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).

An NTP server usually receives its time from an authoritative time source, such as a radio clock or an atomic clock attached to a time server, and then distributes this time across the network. NTP is extremely efficient; no more than one packet per minute is necessary to synchronize two machines to within a millisecond of each other.

NTP uses a stratum to describe the distance between a network device and an authoritative time source:

- A stratum 1 time server is directly attached to an authoritative time source (such as a radio or atomic clock or a GPS time source).
- A stratum 2 NTP server receives its time through NTP from a stratum 1 time server.

Before synchronizing, NTP compares the time reported by several network devices and does not synchronize with one that is significantly different, even if it is a stratum 1. Because Cisco NX-OS cannot connect to a radio or atomic clock and act as a stratum 1 server, we recommend that you use the public NTP servers

available on the Internet. If the network is isolated from the Internet, Cisco NX-OS allows you to configure the time as though it were synchronized through NTP, even though it was not.

**Note**

You can create NTP peer relationships to designate the time-serving hosts that you want your network device to consider synchronizing with and to keep accurate time if a server failure occurs.

The time kept on a device is a critical resource, so we strongly recommend that you use the security features of NTP to avoid the accidental or malicious setting of incorrect time. Two mechanisms are available: an access list-based restriction scheme and an encrypted authentication mechanism.

## NTP as Time Server

The Cisco Nexus device can use NTP to distribute time.

Other devices can configure it as a time server. You can also configure the device to act as an authoritative NTP server, enabling it to distribute time even when it is not synchronized to an outside time source.

## Distributing NTP Using CFS

Cisco Fabric Services (CFS) distributes the local NTP configuration to all Cisco devices in the network.

After enabling CFS on your device, a network-wide lock is applied to NTP whenever an NTP configuration is started. After making the NTP configuration changes, you can discard or commit them.

In either case, the CFS lock is then released from the NTP application.

## Clock Manager

Clocks are resources that need to be shared across different processes.

Multiple time synchronization protocols, such as NTP and Precision Time Protocol (PTP), might be running in the system.

The clock manager allows you to specify the protocol and a VDC running that protocol to control the various clocks in the system. Once you specify the protocol and VDC, the system clock starts updating.

## High Availability

Stateless restarts are supported for NTP. After a reboot or a supervisor switchover, the running configuration is applied.

You can configure NTP peers to provide redundancy in case an NTP server fails.

# Licensing Requirements

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	NTP requires no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the Cisco NX-OS system images and is provided at no extra charge to you. For a complete explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide.

## Prerequisites for NTP

NTP has the following prerequisites:

- To configure NTP, you must have connectivity to at least one server that is running NTP.

## Guidelines and Limitations for NTP

NTP has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- The Cisco NX-OS software supports NTP version 4 (NTPv4).
- NTP server functionality is supported.
- You should have a peer association with another device only when you are sure that your clock is reliable (which means that you are a client of a reliable NTP server).
- A peer configured alone takes on the role of a server and should be used as a backup. If you have two servers, you can configure several devices to point to one server and the remaining devices to point to the other server. You can then configure a peer association between these two servers to create a more reliable NTP configuration.
- If you have only one server, you should configure all the devices as clients to that server.
- You can configure up to 64 NTP entities (servers and peers).
- If CFS is disabled for NTP, NTP does not distribute any configuration and does not accept a distribution from other devices in the network.
- After CFS distribution is enabled for NTP, the entry of an NTP configuration command locks the network for NTP configuration until a **commit** command is entered. During the lock, no changes can be made to the NTP configuration by any other device in the network except the device that initiated the lock.
- If you use CFS to distribute NTP, all devices in the network should have the same VRFs configured as you use for NTP.
- If you configure NTP in a VRF, ensure that the NTP server and peers can reach each other through the configured VRFs.

- You must manually distribute NTP authentication keys on the NTP server and Cisco NX-OS devices across the network.
- Use NTP broadcast or multicast associations when time accuracy and reliability requirements are modest, your network is localized, and the network has more than 20 clients. We recommend that you use NTP broadcast or multicast associations in networks that have limited bandwidth, system memory, or CPU resources.

**Note**

Time accuracy is marginally reduced in NTP broadcast associations because information flows only one way.

## Default Settings for NTP

The following table lists the default settings for NTP parameters:

**Table 31: Default NTP Parameters**

Parameters	Default
NTP	Enabled
NTP authentication	Disabled
NTP access	Enabled
NTP logging	Disabled

## Configuring NTP

### Enabling or Disabling NTP

#### Before you begin

Make sure that you are in the correct VDC. To change the VDC, use the **switchto vdc** command.

#### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>[no] feature ntp</b>	Enables or disables NTP in VDC. NTP is enabled by default.  <b>Note</b> NTP is enabled or disabled using the <b>[no] ntp enable</b> command.



	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show ntp status</b>	Displays the status of the NTP application.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to disable NTP:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# no feature ntp
```

## Configuring the Device as an Authoritative NTP Server

You can configure the device to act as an authoritative NTP server, enabling it to distribute time even when it is not synchronized to an existing time server.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	[no] <b>ntp master</b> [ <i>stratum</i> ]	Configures the device as an authoritative NTP server.  You can specify a different stratum level from which NTP clients get their time synchronized. The range is from 1 to 15.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) <b>show running-config ntp</b>	Displays the NTP configuration.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to configure the Cisco NX-OS device as an authoritative NTP server with a different stratum level:

```
switch# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# ntp master 5
```

## Configuring an NTP Server and Peer

You can configure an NTP server and peer.

### Before you begin

Make sure that you know the IP address or DNS names of your NTP server and its peers.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# [ <b>no</b> ] <b>ntp server</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i>   <i>dns-name</i> } [ <b>key</b> <i>key-id</i> ] [ <b>maxpoll</b> <i>max-poll</i> ] [ <b>minpoll</b> <i>min-poll</i> ] [ <b>prefer</b> ] [ <b>use-vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> ]	<p>Forms an association with a server.</p> <p>Use the <b>key</b> keyword to configure a key to be used while communicating with the NTP server.</p> <p>The range for the <i>key-id</i> argument is from 1 to 65535.</p> <p>Use the <b>maxpoll</b> and <b>minpoll</b> keywords to configure the maximum and minimum intervals in which to poll a peer. The range for the <i>max-poll</i> and <i>min-poll</i> arguments is from 4 to 16 seconds, and the default values are 6 and 4, respectively.</p> <p>Use the <b>prefer</b> keyword to make this the preferred NTP server for the device.</p> <p>Use the <b>use-vrf</b> keyword to configure the NTP server to communicate over the specified VRF.</p> <p>The <i>vrf-name</i> argument can be default, management, or any case-sensitive alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.</p> <p><b>Note</b> If you configure a key to be used while communicating with the NTP server, make sure that the key exists as a trusted key on the device.</p>
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config)# [ <b>no</b> ] <b>ntp peer</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i>   <i>dns-name</i> } [ <b>key</b> <i>key-id</i> ] [ <b>maxpoll</b> <i>max-poll</i> ] [ <b>minpoll</b> <i>min-poll</i> ] [ <b>prefer</b> ] [ <b>use-vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> ]	<p>Forms an association with a peer. You can specify multiple peer associations.</p> <p>Use the <b>key</b> keyword to configure a key to be used while communicating with the NTP peer. The range for the <i>key-id</i> argument is from 1 to 65535.</p> <p>Use the <b>maxpoll</b> and <b>minpoll</b> keywords to configure the maximum and minimum intervals in which to poll a peer. The range for the <i>max-poll</i> and <i>min-poll</i> arguments is from 4 to</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>17 seconds, and the default values are 6 and 4, respectively.</p> <p>Use the <b>prefer</b> keyword to make this the preferred NTP peer for the device.</p> <p>Use the <b>use-vrf</b> keyword to configure the NTP peer to communicate over the specified VRF. The <i>vrf-name</i> argument can be <b>default</b>, <b>management</b>, or any case-sensitive alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show ntp peers</b>	<p>Displays the configured server and peers.</p> <p><b>Note</b> A domain name is resolved only when you have a DNS server configured.</p>
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

```

switch# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# ntp server 2400::1 use-vrf default
switch(config)# show ntp peers
-----
Peer IP Address Serv/Peer
-----
2400::1 Server(configured)
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%

switch(config)#show ntp peer-status
Total Peers: 1
* - selected for sync, + - peer mode(active),
--peer mode(passive), = -polled in client mode
remote local st poll reach delay vrf
-----
*2400::1 :: 9 16 37 0.00122 default

```

## Configuring NTP Authentication

You can configure the device to authenticate the time sources to which the local clock is synchronized. When you enable NTP authentication, the device synchronizes to a time source only if the source carries one of the authentication keys specified by the **ntp trusted-key** command. The device drops any packets that fail the authentication check and prevents them from updating the local clock. NTP authentication is disabled by default.

### Before you begin

Authentication for NTP servers and NTP peers is configured on a per-association basis using the **key** keyword on each **ntp server** and **ntp peer** command. Make sure that you configured all NTP server and peer associations with the authentication keys that you plan to specify in this procedure. Any **ntp server** or **ntp peer** commands that do not specify the **key** keyword will continue to operate without authentication.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# [ <b>no</b> ] <b>ntp authentication-key</b> <i>number md5 md5-string</i>	Defines the authentication keys. The device does not synchronize to a time source unless the source has one of these authentication keys and the key number is specified by the <b>ntp trusted-key number</b> command.  Cisco NX-OS supports up to 15 alphanumeric characters for the MD5 string.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show ntp authentication-keys</b>	Displays the configured NTP authentication keys.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config)# [ <b>no</b> ] <b>ntp trusted-key number</b>	Specifies one or more keys (defined in Step 2) that a time source must provide in its NTP packets in order for the device to synchronize to it. The range for trusted keys is from 1 to 65535.  This command provides protection against accidentally synchronizing the device to a time source that is not trusted.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show ntp trusted-keys</b>	Displays the configured NTP trusted keys.
<b>Step 6</b>	switch(config)# [ <b>no</b> ] <b>ntp authenticate</b>	Enables or disables the NTP authentication feature. NTP authentication is disabled by default.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show ntp authentication-status</b>	Displays the status of NTP authentication.
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to configure the device to synchronize only to time sources that provide authentication key 42 in their NTP packets:

```

switch# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# ntp authentication-key 42 md5 aNiceKey
switch(config)# ntp server 10.1.1.1 key 42
switch(config)# ntp trusted-key 42
switch(config)# ntp authenticate
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
switch(config)#

```

## Configuring NTP Access Restrictions

You can control access to NTP services by using access groups. Specifically, you can specify the types of requests that the device allows and the servers from which it accepts responses.

If you do not configure any access groups, NTP access is granted to all devices. If you configure any access groups, NTP access is granted only to the remote device whose source IP address passes the access list criteria.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>[no] ntp access-group {match-all   {peer   serve   serve-only   query-only } access-list-name}}</b>	<p>Creates or removes an access group to control NTP access and applies a basic IP access list.</p> <p>The access group options are scanned in the following order, from least restrictive to most restrictive. However, if NTP matches a deny ACL rule in a configured peer, ACL processing stops and does not continue to the next access group option.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <b>peer</b> keyword enables the device to receive time requests and NTP control queries and to synchronize itself to the servers specified in the access list.</li> <li>• The <b>serve</b> keyword enables the device to receive time requests and NTP control queries from the servers specified in the access list but not to synchronize itself to the specified servers.</li> <li>• The <b>serve-only</b> keyword enables the device to receive only time requests from servers specified in the access list.</li> <li>• The <b>query-only</b> keyword enables the device to receive only NTP control queries from the servers specified in the access list.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <b>match-all</b> keyword enables the access group options to be scanned in the following order: peer, serve, serve-only, query-only.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config)# <b>show ntp access-groups</b>	(Optional) Displays the NTP access group configuration.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to configure the device to allow it to synchronize to a peer from access group "accesslist1":

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ntp access-group peer accesslist1
switch(config)# show ntp access-groups
Access List Type
-----
accesslist1 Peer
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
switch(config)#
```

## Configuring the NTP Source IP Address

NTP sets the source IP address for all NTP packets based on the address of the interface through which the NTP packets are sent. You can configure NTP to use a specific source IP address.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	[no] <b>ntp source ip-address</b>	Configures the source IP address for all NTP packets. The <i>ip-address</i> can be in IPv4 or IPv6 format.

### Example

This example shows how to configure an NTP source IP address of 192.0.2.2.

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ntp source 192.0.2.2
```

## Configuring the NTP Source Interface

You can configure NTP to use a specific interface.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	[no] <b>ntp source-interface</b> <i>interface</i>	Configures the source interface for all NTP packets. The following list contains the valid values for <i>interface</i> . <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ethernet</li><li>• loopback</li><li>• mgmt</li><li>• port-channel</li><li>• vlan</li></ul>

### Example

This example shows how to configure the NTP source interface:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ntp source-interface ethernet
```

## Configuring NTP Logging

You can configure NTP logging in order to generate system logs with significant NTP events. NTP logging is disabled by default.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>[no] ntp logging</b>	Enables or disables system logs to be generated with significant NTP events. NTP logging is disabled by default.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show ntp logging-status</b>	Displays the NTP logging configuration status.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

The following example shows how to enable NTP logging in order to generate system logs with significant NTP events:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ntp logging
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
switch(config)#
```

## Enabling CFS Distribution for NTP

You can enable CFS distribution for NTP in order to distribute the NTP configuration to other CFS-enabled devices.

### Before you begin

Make sure that you have enabled CFS distribution for the device.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>[no] ntp distribute</b>	Enables or disables the device to receive NTP configuration updates that are distributed through CFS.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show ntp status</b>	Displays the NTP CFS distribution status.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to enable the device to receive NTP configuration updates through CFS:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ntp distribute
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Committing NTP Configuration Changes

When you commit the NTP configuration changes, the effective database is overwritten by the configuration changes in the pending database and all the devices in the network receive the same configuration.



**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>ntp commit</b>	Distributes the NTP configuration changes to all Cisco NX-OS devices in the network and releases the CFS lock. This command overwrites the effective database with the changes made to the pending database.

## Discarding NTP Configuration Changes

After making the configuration changes, you can choose to discard the changes instead of committing them. If you discard the changes, Cisco NX-OS removes the pending database changes and releases the CFS lock.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>ntp abort</b>	Discards the NTP configuration changes in the pending database and releases the CFS lock. Use this command on the device where you started the NTP configuration.

## Releasing the CFS Session Lock

If you have performed an NTP configuration and have forgotten to release the lock by either committing or discarding the changes, you or another administrator can release the lock from any device in the network. This action also discards pending database changes.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>clear ntp session</b>	Discards the NTP configuration changes in the pending database and releases the CFS lock.

## Verifying the NTP Configuration

Command	Purpose
<b>show ntp access-groups</b>	Displays the NTP access group configuration.

Command	Purpose
<b>show ntp authentication-keys</b>	Displays the configured NTP authentication keys.
<b>show ntp authentication-status</b>	Displays the status of NTP authentication.
<b>show ntp internal</b>	Displays internal NTP information.
<b>show ntp logging-status</b>	Displays the NTP logging status.
<b>show ntp peer-status</b>	Displays the status for all NTP servers and peers.
<b>show ntp peer</b>	Displays all the NTP peers.
<b>show ntp pending</b>	Displays the temporary CFS database for NTP.
<b>show ntp pending-diff</b>	Displays the difference between the pending CFS database and the current NTP configuration.
<b>show ntp rts-update</b>	Displays the RTS update status.
<b>show ntp session status</b>	Displays the NTP CFS distribution session information.
<b>show ntp source</b>	Displays the configured NTP source IP address.
<b>show ntp source-interface</b>	Displays the configured NTP source interface.
<b>show ntp statistics {io   local   memory   peer {ipaddr {ipv4-addr}   name peer-name}}</b>	Displays the NTP statistics.
<b>show ntp status</b>	Displays the NTP CFS distribution status.
<b>show ntp trusted-keys</b>	Displays the configured NTP trusted keys.
<b>show running-config ntp</b>	Displays NTP information.

## Configuration Examples for NTP

### Configuration Examples for NTP

This example shows how to configure an NTP server and peer, enable NTP authentication, enable NTP logging, and then save the startup configuration so that it is saved across reboots and restarts:

```
switch# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# ntp server 192.0.2.105 key 42
switch(config)# ntp peer 192.0.2.105
switch(config)# show ntp peers
-----
Peer IP Address Serv/Peer
-----
192.0.2.100 Peer (configured)
192.0.2.105 Server (configured)
switch(config)# ntp authentication-key 42 md5 aNiceKey
```

```

switch(config)# show ntp authentication-keys
-----
Auth key MD5 String
-----
42 aNicekey
switch(config)# ntp trusted-key 42
switch(config)# show ntp trusted-keys
Trusted Keys:
42
switch(config)# ntp authenticate
switch(config)# show ntp authentication-status
Authentication enabled.
switch(config)# ntp logging
switch(config)# show ntp logging
NTP logging enabled.
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
switch(config)#

```

This example shows an NTP access group configuration with the following restrictions:

- Peer restrictions are applied to IP addresses that pass the criteria of the access list named “peer-acl.”
- Serve restrictions are applied to IP addresses that pass the criteria of the access list named “serve-acl.”
- Serve-only restrictions are applied to IP addresses that pass the criteria of the access list named “serve-only-acl.”
- Query-only restrictions are applied to IP addresses that pass the criteria of the access list named “query-only-acl.”

```

switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.1.1.1
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.2.2.2
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.3.3.3
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.4.4.4
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.5.5.5
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.6.6.6
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.7.7.7
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.8.8.8
switch(config)# ntp access-group peer peer-acl
switch(config)# ntp access-group serve serve-acl
switch(config)# ntp access-group serve-only serve-only-acl
switch(config)# ntp access-group query-only query-only-acl
switch(config)# ip access-list peer-acl
switch(config-acl)# 10 permit ip host 10.1.1.1 any
switch(config-acl)# 20 permit ip host 10.8.8.8 any
switch(config)# ip access-list serve-acl
switch(config-acl)# 10 permit ip host 10.4.4.4 any
switch(config-acl)# 20 permit ip host 10.5.5.5 any
switch(config)# ip access-list serve-only-acl
switch(config-acl)# 10 permit ip host 10.6.6.6 any
switch(config-acl)# 20 permit ip host 10.7.7.7 any
switch(config)# ip access-list query-only-acl
switch(config-acl)# 10 permit ip host 10.2.2.2 any
switch(config-acl)# 20 permit ip host 10.3.3.3 any

```





## CHAPTER 19

# Configuring EEM

---

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About Embedded Event Manager, on page 219](#)
- [EEM Policies, on page 220](#)
- [EEM Event Statement, on page 221](#)
- [EEM Action Statements, on page 222](#)
- [VSH Script Policies, on page 222](#)
- [EEM Event Correlation, on page 222](#)
- [EEM Virtualization Support, on page 223](#)
- [EEM Licensing Requirements, on page 223](#)
- [Prerequisites for EEM, on page 223](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for EEM, on page 223](#)
- [Default Settings for EEM, on page 224](#)
- [Configuring EEM, on page 224](#)
- [Verifying the EEM Configuration, on page 236](#)
- [Configuration Examples for EEM, on page 237](#)

## Information About Embedded Event Manager

The Embedded Event Manager (EEM) monitors events that occur on your device and takes action to recover or troubleshoot these events, based on your configuration.

EEM consists of three major components:

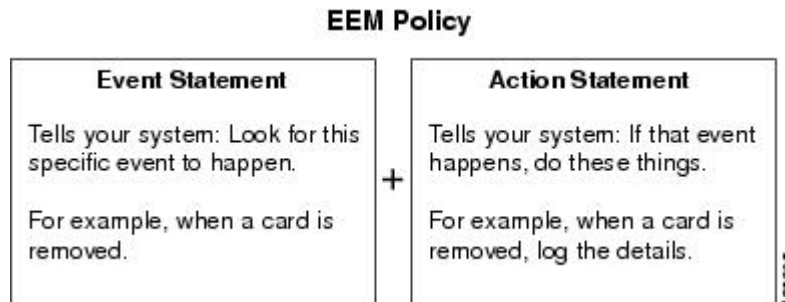
- **Event statements**—Events to monitor from another Cisco NX-OS component that might require some action, workaround, or notification.
- **Action statements**—An action that EEM can take, such as sending an e-mail, or disabling an interface, to recover from an event.
- **Policies**—An event paired with one or more actions to troubleshoot or recover from the event.

# EEM Policies

An EEM policy consists of an event statement and one or more action statements. The event statement defines the event to look for as well as the filtering characteristics for the event. The action statement defines the action EEM takes when the event occurs.

The following figure shows the two basic statements in an EEM policy.

**Figure 2: EEM Policy Statement**



You can configure EEM policies by using the CLI or a VSH script.

EEM gives you a device-wide view of policy management. You configure EEM policies on the supervisor, and EEM pushes the policy to the correct module based on the event type. EEM takes any actions for a triggered event either locally on the module or on the supervisor (the default option).

EEM maintains event logs on the supervisor.

Cisco NX-OS has a number of preconfigured system policies. These system policies define many common events and actions for the device. System policy names begin with two underscore characters (\_\_).

You can create user policies to suit your network. If you create a user policy, any actions in your policy occur after EEM triggers any system policy actions that are related to the same event as your policy. To configure a user policy, see [Defining a User Policy Using the CLI, on page 225](#).

You can also override some system policies. The overrides that you configure take the place of the system policy. You can override the event or the actions.

Use the **show event manager system-policy** command to view the preconfigured system policies and determine which policies that you can override.

To configure an overriding policy, see [Overriding a Policy, on page 231](#).



## Note

You should use the **show running-config eem** command to check the configuration of each policy. An override policy that consists of an event statement and no action statement triggers no action and no notification of failures.

Your override policy should always include an event statement. An override policy without an event statement overrides all possible events in the system policy.

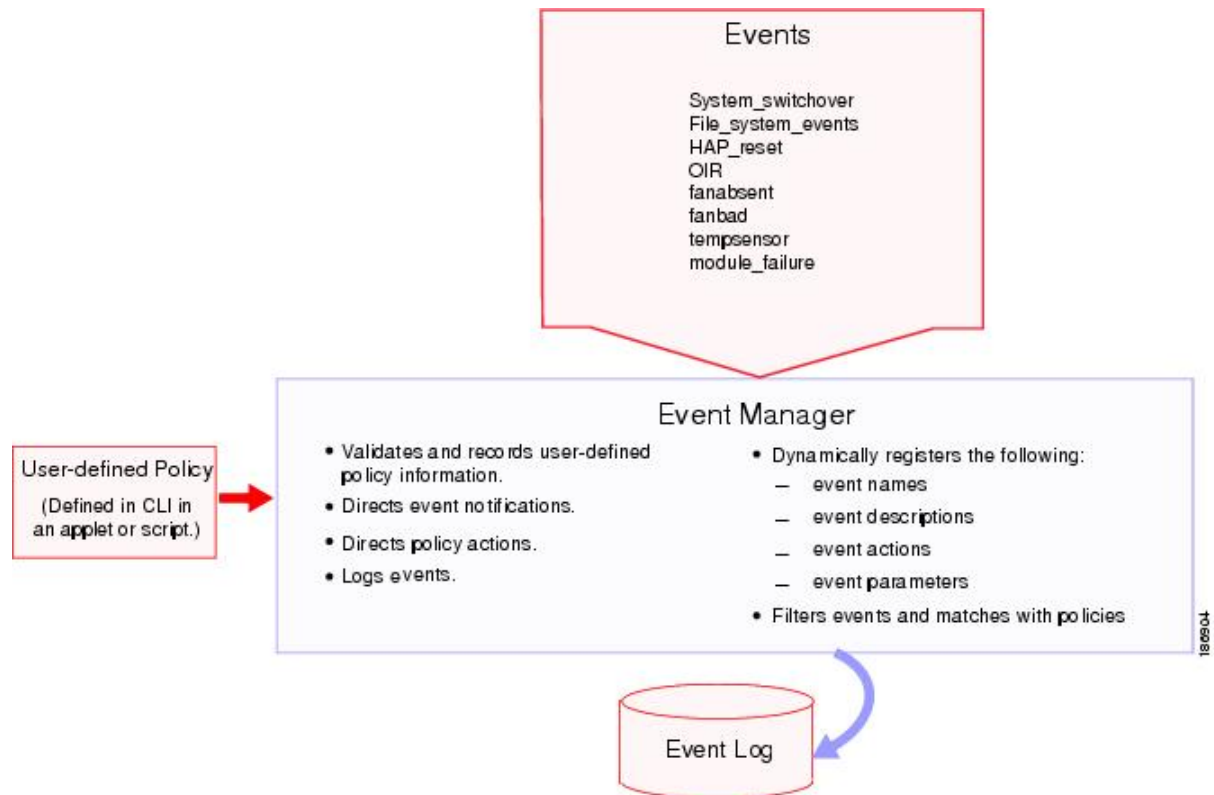
# EEM Event Statement

An event is any device activity for which some action, such as a workaround or a notification, should be taken. In many cases, these events are related to faults in the device such as when an interface or a fan malfunctions.

EEM defines event filters so that only critical events or multiple occurrences of an event within a specified time period trigger an associated action.

The following figure shows events that are handled by EEM.

**Figure 3: EEM Overview**



Event statements specify the event that triggers a policy to run. You can configure multiple event triggers. For more information on configuring multiple events, see [EEM Event Correlation, on page 222](#).

EEM schedules and runs policies on the basis of event statements. EEM examines the event and action commands and runs them as defined.



## Note

If you want to allow the triggered event to process any default actions, you must configure the EEM policy to allow the event default action statement.

## EEM Action Statements

Action statements describe the action that is triggered by a policy. Each policy can have multiple action statements. If no action is associated with a policy, EEM still observes events but takes no actions.

EEM supports the following actions in action statements:

- Execute any CLI commands.
- Update a counter.
- Log an exception.
- Reload the device.
- Generate a syslog message.
- Generate an SNMP notification.
- Use the default action for the system policy.

**Note**

If you want to allow the triggered event to process any default actions, you must configure the EEM policy to allow the default action. For example, if you match a CLI command in a match statement, you must add the event-default action statement to the EEM policy or EEM does not allow the CLI command to execute.

Verify that your action statements within your user policy or overriding policy do not negate each other or adversely affect the associated system policy.

## VSH Script Policies

You can also write policies in a VSH script, using a text editor. These policies have an event statement and action statement(s) just as other policies, and these policies can either augment or override system policies. After you write your VSH script policy, copy it to the device and activate it. To configure a policy in a VSH script, see [Defining a Policy Using a VSH Script, on page 230](#).

## EEM Event Correlation

You can trigger an EEM policy based on a combination of events. First, you use the **tag** keyword to create and differentiate multiple events in the EEM policy. Then, using a set of Boolean operators (and, or, andnot), with the count and time, you can define a combination of these events to trigger a custom action.

**Note**

For information about configuring EEM event correlation, see [Defining a User Policy Using the CLI, on page 225](#).



## EEM Virtualization Support

You configure EEM in the virtual device context (VDC) that you are logged into. By default, Cisco NX-OS places you in the default VDC. You must be in this VDC to configure policies for module-based events.

Not all actions or events are visible in all VDCs. You must have network-admin or vdc-admin privileges to configure policies.

## EEM Licensing Requirements

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	EEM requires no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the Cisco NX-OS system images and is provided at no extra charge to you. For a complete explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide.

## Prerequisites for EEM

EEM has the following prerequisite:

- You must have network-admin or vdc-admin user privileges to configure EEM.

## Guidelines and Limitations for EEM

EEM has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- The maximum number of configurable EEM policies is 500.
- Action statements within your user policy or overriding policy should not negate each other or adversely affect the associated system policy.
- If you want to allow a triggered event to process any default actions, you must configure the EEM policy to allow the default action. For example, if you match a CLI command in a match statement, you must add the event-default action statement to the EEM policy or EEM does not allow the CLI command to execute.
- An override policy that consists of an event statement and no action statement triggers no action and no notification of failures.
- An override policy without an event statement overrides all possible events in the system policy.
- In regular command expressions, all keywords must be expanded and only the \* symbol can be used for argument replacement.
- EEM event correlation supports up to four event statements in a single policy. The event types can be the same or different, but only these event types are supported: cli, counter, module, module-failure, oir, snmp, syslog, and track.

- When more than one event statement is included in an EEM policy, each event statement must have a **tag** keyword with a unique *tag* argument.
- EEM event correlation does not override the system default policies.
- Default action execution is not supported for policies that are configured with tagged events.

## Default Settings for EEM

The following table lists the default setting for EEM parameters:

**Table 32: Default EEM Parameters**

Parameters	Default
System Policies	Active

## Configuring EEM

### Defining an Environment Variable

You can define a variable to serve as a parameter in an EEM policy.

#### Before you begin

Make sure that you are in the correct VDC. To change the VDC, use the **switchto vdc** command.

#### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>event manager environment</b> <i>variable-name variable-value</i>	Creates an environment variable for EEM. The <i>variable-name</i> can be any case-sensitive alphanumeric string up to 29 characters. The <i>variable-value</i> can be any quoted alphanumeric string up to 39 characters.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show event manager environment</b> { <i>variable-name</i>   <b>all</b> }	Displays information about the configured environment variables. Enclose the string in quotation marks.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to define an environment variable:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# event manager environment emailto "admin@anyplace.com"
switch(config)# show event manager environment all
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Defining a User Policy Using the CLI

You can define a user policy using the CLI.

### Before you begin

Make sure that you are in the correct VDC. To change the VDC, use the **switchto vdc** command.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>event manager applet</b> <i>applet-name</i>	Registers the applet with EEM and enters applet configuration mode. The <i>applet-name</i> can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 29 characters.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config-applet)# <b>description</b> <i>policy-description</i>	Configures a descriptive string for the policy. The string can be any alphanumeric string up to 80 characters. Enclose the string in quotation marks.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config-applet)# <b>event</b> <i>event-statement</i>	Configures the event statement for the policy. See <a href="#">Event Statement Configuration, on page 226</a> .  Repeat Step 4 for multiple event statements.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config-applet)# <b>tag</b> <i>tag</i> { <b>and</b>   <b>andnot</b>   <b>or</b> } <i>tag</i> [ <b>and</b>   <b>andnot</b>   <b>or</b> { <i>tag</i> }] { <b>happens occurs in seconds</b> }	Correlates multiple events in the policy.  The range for the <i>occurs</i> argument is from 1 to 4294967295. The range for the <i>seconds</i> argument is from 0 to 4294967295 seconds.
<b>Step 6</b>	switch(config-applet)# <b>action</b> <i>number</i> [ <i>number2</i> ] <i>action-statement</i>	Configures an action statement for the policy. See <a href="#">Action Statement Configuration, on page 228</a> .  Repeat Step 6 for multiple action statements.
<b>Step 7</b>	switch(config-applet)# <b>show event manager</b> <b>policy-state</b> <i>name</i> [ <i>module module-id</i> ]	Displays information about the status of the configured policy.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 8</b>	switch(config-applet)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to define a user policy by using the CLI:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# event manager applet monitorShutdown
switch(config-applet)# description "Monitors interface shutdown."
switch(config-applet)# event cli match "shutdown"
switch(config-applet)# tag one or two happens 1 in 10000
switch(config-applet)# action 1.0 cli local show interface e 3/1
switch(config-applet)# show event manager policy-state monitorShutdown
switch(config-applet)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Event Statement Configuration

Use one of the following commands in EEM configuration mode to configure an event statement:

Command	Purpose
<b>event cli</b> [ <b>tag tag</b> ] <b>match</b> <i>expression</i> [ <b>count repeats</b>   <b>time seconds</b> ]  <b>Example:</b> <b>switch(config-applet)# event cli match "shutdown"</b>	Triggers an event if you enter a command that matches the regular expression.  The <b>tag tag</b> keyword-argument pair identifies this specific event when multiple events are included in the policy.  The <i>repeats</i> argument range is from 1 to 65000. The <i>seconds</i> argument range is from 0 to 4294967295, where 0 indicates no time limit.  Enclose the string in quotation marks.
<b>event counter</b> [ <b>tag tag</b> ] <b>name</b> <i>counter</i> <b>entry-val entry</b> <b>entry-op</b> { <b>eq</b>   <b>ge</b>   <b>gt</b>   <b>le</b>   <b>lt</b>   <b>ne</b> } [ <b>exit-val exit</b> <b>exit-op</b> { <b>eq</b>   <b>ge</b>   <b>gt</b>   <b>le</b>   <b>lt</b>   <b>ne</b> }]  <b>Example:</b> <b>switch(config-applet)# event counter name mycounter entry-val 20 gt</b>	Triggers an event if the counter crosses the entry threshold based on the entry operation. The event resets immediately. Optionally, you can configure the event to reset after the counter passes the exit threshold.  The <b>tag tag</b> keyword-argument pair identifies this specific event when multiple events are included in the policy.  The <i>counter</i> name can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 28 characters. The <i>entry</i> and <i>exit</i> value ranges are from 0 to 2147483647.

Command	Purpose
<b>event fanabsent</b> [ <i>fan number</i> ] <i>time seconds</i> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-applet)# <b>event fanabsent time 3000</b>	Triggers an event if a fan is removed from the device for more than the configured time, in seconds. The <i>number</i> range is module dependent. The <i>seconds</i> range is from 10 to 64000.
<b>event fanbad</b> [ <i>fan number</i> ] <i>time seconds</i> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-applet)# <b>event fanbad time 3000</b>	Triggers an event if a fan fails for more than the configured time, in seconds. The <i>number</i> range is module dependent. The <i>seconds</i> range is from 10 to 64000.
<b>event oir</b> [ <i>tag tag</i> ] { <i>fan</i>   <i>module</i>   <i>powersupply</i> } { <i>anyoir</i>   <i>insert</i>   <i>remove</i> } [ <i>number</i> ] <b>Example:</b> switch(config-applet)# <b>event oir fan remove 4</b>	Triggers an event if the configured device element (fan, module, or power supply) is inserted or removed from the device. The <b>tag tag</b> keyword-argument pair identifies this specific event when multiple events are included in the policy. You can optionally configure a specific fan, module, or power supply number. The <i>number</i> range is as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fan number—Module dependent.</li> <li>• Module number—Device dependent.</li> <li>• Power supply number—The range is from 1 to 3.</li> </ul>
<b>event policy-default count</b> <i>repeats</i> [ <i>time seconds</i> ] <b>Example:</b> switch(config-applet)# <b>event policy-default count 3</b>	Uses the event configured in the system policy. Use this option for overriding policies. The <i>repeats</i> range is from 1 to 65000. The <i>seconds</i> range is from 0 to 4294967295, where 0 indicates no time limit.
<b>event snmp</b> [ <i>tag tag</i> ] <i>oid oid</i> <i>get-type</i> { <i>exact</i>   <i>next</i> } <i>entry-op</i> { <i>eq</i>   <i>ge</i>   <i>gt</i>   <i>le</i>   <i>lt</i>   <i>ne</i> } <i>entry-val entry</i> [ <i>exit-comb</i> { <i>and</i>   <i>or</i> }] <i>exit-op</i> { <i>eq</i>   <i>ge</i>   <i>gt</i>   <i>le</i>   <i>lt</i>   <i>ne</i> } <i>exit-val exit</i> <i>exit-time time</i> <b>polling-interval interval</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-applet)# <b>event snmp oid 1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.6 get-type next entry-op lt 300 entry-val 0 exit-op eq 400 exit-time 30 polling-interval 300</b>	Triggers an event if the SNMP OID crosses the entry threshold based on the entry operation. The event resets immediately. Optionally, you can configure the event to reset after the counter passes the exit threshold. The OID is in dotted decimal notation. The <b>tag tag</b> keyword-argument pair identifies this specific event when multiple events are included in the policy. The <i>entry</i> and <i>exit</i> value ranges are from 0 to 18446744073709551615. The time, in seconds, is from 0 to 2147483647. The interval, in seconds, is from 1 to 2147483647.

Command	Purpose
<b>event storm-control</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-applet)# <b>event storm-control</b>	Triggers an event if the traffic on a port exceeds the configured storm control threshold.
<b>event sysmgr memory</b> [ <i>module module-num</i> ] <b>major</b> <i>major-percent</i> <b>minor</b> <i>minor-percent</i> <b>clear</b> <i>clear-percent</i> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-applet)# <b>event sysmgr memory minor 80</b>	Triggers an event if the specified system manager memory threshold is exceeded. The range for the percentage is from 1 to 99.
<b>event temperature</b> [ <i>module slot</i> ] [ <i>sensor number</i> ] <b>threshold</b> { <i>any</i>   <i>major</i>   <i>minor</i> } <b>Example:</b> switch(config-applet)# <b>event temperature module 2 threshold any</b>	Triggers an event if the temperature sensor exceeds the configured threshold. The sensor range is from 1 to 18.
<b>event track</b> [ <i>tag tag</i> ] <i>object-number</i> <b>state</b> { <i>any</i>   <i>down</i>   <i>up</i> } <b>Example:</b> switch(config-applet)# <b>event track 1 state down</b>	Triggers an event if the tracked object is in the configured state.  The <b>tag tag</b> keyword-argument pair identifies this specific event when multiple events are included in the policy.  The <i>object-number</i> range is from 1 to 500.

## Action Statement Configuration

Use the following commands in EEM configuration mode to configure action statements:

Command	Purpose
<b>action</b> <i>number</i> [ <i>number2</i> ] <b>cli</b> <i>command1</i> [ <i>command2...</i> ] [ <i>local</i> ] <b>Example:</b> switch(config-applet)# <b>action 1.0 cli "show interface e 3/1"</b>	Runs the configured CLI commands. You can optionally run the commands on the module where the event occurred. The action label is in the format <i>number1.number2</i> .  <i>number</i> can be any number up to 16 digits. The range for <i>number2</i> is from 0 to 9.  Enclose the string in quotation marks.

Command	Purpose
<b>action</b> <i>number</i> [ <i>number2</i> ] <b>counter name</b> <i>counter</i> <b>value</b> <i>val</i> <b>op</b> { <b>dec</b>   <b>inc</b>   <b>nop</b>   <b>set</b> } <b>Example:</b> switch(config-applet)# <b>action 2.0 counter</b> <b>name mycounter value 20 op inc</b>	Modifies the counter by the configured value and operation. The action label is in the format <i>number1.number2</i> . <i>number</i> can be any number up to 16 digits. The range for <i>number2</i> is from 0 to 9. The counter name can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 28 characters. The <i>val</i> can be an integer from 0 to 2147483647 or a substituted parameter.
<b>action</b> <i>number</i> [ <i>number2</i> ] <b>event-default</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-applet)# <b>action 1.0</b> <b>event-default</b>	Executes the default action for the associated event. The action label is in the format <i>number1.number2</i> . <i>number</i> can be any number up to 16 digits. The range for <i>number2</i> is from 0 to 9.
<b>action</b> <i>number</i> [ <i>number2</i> ] <b>policy-default</b> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-applet)# <b>action 1.0</b> <b>policy-default</b>	Executes the default action for the policy that you are overriding. The action label is in the format <i>number1.number2</i> . <i>number</i> can be any number up to 16 digits. The range for <i>number2</i> is from 0 to 9.
<b>action</b> <i>number</i> [ <i>number2</i> ] <b>reload</b> [ <b>module slot</b> [- <i>slot</i> ]] <b>Example:</b> switch(config-applet)# <b>action 1.0 reload</b> <b>module 3-5</b>	Forces one or more modules or the entire system to reload. <i>number</i> can be any number up to 16 digits. The range for <i>number2</i> is from 0 to 9.
<b>action</b> <i>number</i> [ <i>number2</i> ] <b>snmp-trap</b> {[ <b>intdata1 data</b> [ <b>intdata2 data</b> ] [ <b>strdata string</b> ]} <b>Example:</b> switch(config-applet)# <b>action 1.0 snmp-trap</b> <b>strdata "temperature problem"</b>	Sends an SNMP trap with the configured data. <i>number</i> can be any number up to 16 digits. The range for <i>number2</i> is from 0 to 9. The <i>data</i> arguments can be any number up to 80 digits. The <i>string</i> can be any alphanumeric string up to 80 characters. Enclose the string in quotation marks.
<b>action</b> <i>number</i> [ <i>number2</i> ] <b>syslog</b> [ <b>priority prio-val</b> ] <b>msg</b> <i>error-message</i> <b>Example:</b> switch(config-applet)# <b>action 1.0 syslog</b> <b>priority notifications msg "cpu</b> <b>high"</b>	Sends a customized syslog message at the configured priority. <i>number</i> can be any number up to 16 digits. The range for <i>number2</i> is from 0 to 9. The <i>error-message</i> can be any quoted alphanumeric string up to 80 characters.

**Note**

If you want to allow the triggered event to process any default actions, you must configure the EEM policy to allow the default action. For example, if you match a CLI command in a match statement, you must add the event-default action statement to the EEM policy or EEM does not allow the CLI command to execute. You can use the **terminal event-manager bypass** command to allow all EEM policies with CLI matches to execute the CLI command.

## Defining a Policy Using a VSH Script

You can define a policy using a VSH script.

### Before you begin

Make sure that you are in the correct VDC. To change the VDC, use the **switchto vdc** command.

Ensure that you are logged in with administrator privileges.

Ensure that your script name is the same name as the script filename.

### Procedure

**Step 1** In a text editor, list the commands that define the policy.

**Step 2** Name the text file and save it.

**Step 3** Copy the file to the following system directory:

```
bootflash://eem/user_script_policies
```

## Registering and Activating a VSH Script Policy

You can register and activate a policy defined in a VSH script.

### Before you begin

Make sure that you are in the correct VDC. To change the VDC, use the **switchto vdc** command.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>event manager policy</b> <i>policy-script</i>	Registers and activates an EEM script policy. The <i>policy-script</i> can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 29 characters.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>show event manager policy internal</b> <i>name</i>	Displays information about the configured policy.



	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) <code>switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</code>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to register and activate a VSH script policy:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# event manager policy moduleScript
switch(config)# show event manager policy internal moduleScript
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Overriding a Policy

You can override a system policy.

### Before you begin

Make sure that you are in the correct VDC. To change the VDC, use the **switchto vdc** command.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<code>switch# configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<code>switch(config)# show event manager policy-state system-policy</code>	Displays information about the system policy that you want to override, including thresholds. Use the <b>show event manager system-policy</b> command to find the system policy names.
<b>Step 3</b>	<code>switch(config)# event manager applet applet-name override system-policy</code>	Overrides a system policy and enters applet configuration mode. The <i>applet-name</i> can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 29 characters. The <i>system-policy</i> must be one of the existing system policies.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) <code>switch(config-applet)# description policy-description</code>	Configures a descriptive string for the policy. The string can be any alphanumeric string up to 80 characters. Enclose the string in quotation marks.
<b>Step 5</b>	<code>switch(config-applet)# event event-statement</code>	Configures the event statement for the policy. See the “Configuring Event Statements” section on page 14-10.
<b>Step 6</b>	<code>switch(config-applet)# action number action-statement</code>	Configures an action statement for the policy. See the “Configuring Action Statements” section on page 14-13.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		Repeat Step 6 for multiple action statements.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) switch(config-applet)# <b>show event manager policy-state</b> <i>name</i>	Displays information about the configured policy.
<b>Step 8</b>	switch(config-applet)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves this configuration change.

### Example

This example shows how to override a policy:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# show event manager policy-state _ethpm_link_flap
Policy _ethpm_link_flap
  cfg count : 5
  cfg time interval : 10.000000 (seconds)
  Hash default, Count 0
switch(config)# event manager applet ethport override _ethpm_link_flap
switch(config-applet)# description "Overrides link flap policy"
switch(config-applet)# event policy-default count 2 time 1000
switch(config-applet)# action 1.0 syslog priority warnings msg "Link is flapping."
switch(config-applet)# show event manager policy-state ethport
switch(config-applet)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Configuring the Syslog as an EEM Publisher

You can monitor syslog messages from the switch.



### Note

The maximum number of searchable strings to monitor syslog messages is 10.

### Before you begin

Make sure that the EEM is available for registration by syslog.

Configure and execute the syslog daemon.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>event manager applet</b> <i>applet-name</i>	Registers an applet with EEM and enters applet configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	switch(config)# <b>event syslog</b> [ <i>tag tag</i> ] { <i>occurs number</i>   <i>period seconds</i>   <i>pattern msg-text</i>   <i>priority priority</i> }	Monitors syslog messages and invokes the policy based on the search string in the policy.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <b>tag</b> <i>tag</i> keyword-argument pair identifies this specific event when multiple events are included in the policy.</li> <li>• The <b>occurs</b> <i>number</i> keyword-argument pair specifies the number of occurrences. The range is from 1 to 65000.</li> <li>• The <b>period</b> <i>seconds</i> keyword-argument pair specifies the interval during which the event occurs. The range is from 1 to 4294967295.</li> <li>• The <b>pattern</b> <i>msg-text</i> keyword-argument pair specifies the matching regular expression. The pattern can contain character text, an environment variable, or a combination of the two. If the string contains embedded blanks, it is enclosed in quotation marks.</li> <li>• The <b>priority</b> <i>priority</i> keyword-argument pair specifies the priority of the syslog messages. If this keyword is not selected, all syslog messages are set at the informational priority level.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) switch(config)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to configure the syslog as an EEM publisher:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# event manager applet abc
switch(config-applet)# event syslog occurs 10
switch(config-applet)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Defining a User Policy Using the CLI to Trigger a Tcl Script

### Before you begin

Copy the Tcl script which is triggered through an EEM policy to the bootflash of the switch.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>event manager applet</b> <i>applet-name</i>	Registers the applet with EEM and enters applet configuration mode. The <i>applet-name</i> can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 29 characters.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config-applet)# <b>description</b> <i>policy-description</i>	Configures a descriptive string for the policy. The string can be any alphanumeric string up to 80 characters. Enclose the string in quotation marks.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config-applet)# <b>event</b> <i>event-statement</i>	Configures the event statement for the policy. See <a href="#">Event Statement Configuration, on page 226</a> .  Repeat Step 4 for multiple event statements.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config-applet)# <b>tag</b> <i>tag</i> { <b>and</b>   <b>andnot</b>   <b>or</b> } <i>tag</i> [ <b>and</b>   <b>andnot</b>   <b>or</b> { <i>tag</i> }] { <b>happens</b> <i>occurs</i> <b>in</b> <i>seconds</i> }	Correlates multiple events in the policy.  The range for the <i>occurs</i> argument is from 1 to 4294967295. The range for the <i>seconds</i> argument is from 0 to 4294967295 seconds.
<b>Step 6</b>	switch(config-applet)# <b>action</b> <i>number</i> [ <i>number2</i> ] <i>action-statement</i> <i>tcl-filename</i>	Configures an action statement for the policy. See <a href="#">Action Statement Configuration, on page 228</a> .  Repeat Step 6 for multiple action statements.
<b>Step 7</b>	switch(config-applet)# <b>show event manager policy-state</b> <i>name</i> [ <b>module</b> <i>module-id</i> ]	Displays information about the status of the configured policy.
<b>Step 8</b>	switch(config-applet)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

**Example**

Sample Tcl file (Vlan.tcl). Copy this file to the bootflash. Running the file creates 99 VLANs and names them.

```

set i 1
while {$i<100} {
cli configure terminal
cli vlan $i
cli name VLAN$i
cli no shutdown
cli exit
incr i
}

```

This example shows how to define a user policy by using the CLI and invoking a Tcl script by using the action statement once the event is triggered:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# event manager applet TCL
switch(config-applet)# description "Triggers TCL Script"
switch(config-applet)# event cli match "shutdown"
switch(config-applet)# action 1.0 cli local tclsh VLAN.tcl
switch(config-applet)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Defining a User Policy Using the CLI to Trigger a Python Script

### Before you begin

Copy the Python script which is triggered through an EEM policy to the bootflash of the switch.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	switch# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	switch(config)# <b>event manager applet</b> <i>applet-name</i>	Registers the applet with EEM and enters applet configuration mode. The <i>applet-name</i> can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 29 characters.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) switch(config-applet)# <b>description</b> <i>policy-description</i>	Configures a descriptive string for the policy. The string can be any alphanumeric string up to 80 characters. Enclose the string in quotation marks.
<b>Step 4</b>	switch(config-applet)# <b>event</b> <i>event-statement</i>	Configures the event statement for the policy. See <a href="#">Event Statement Configuration, on page 226</a> .  Repeat Step 4 for multiple event statements.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) switch(config-applet)# <b>tag</b> <i>tag</i> { <b>and</b>   <b>andnot</b>   <b>or</b> } <i>tag</i> [ <b>and</b>   <b>andnot</b>   <b>or</b> { <i>tag</i> }] { <b>happens</b> <i>occurs in seconds</i> }	Correlates multiple events in the policy.  The range for the <i>occurs</i> argument is from 1 to 4294967295. The range for the <i>seconds</i> argument is from 0 to 4294967295 seconds.
<b>Step 6</b>	switch(config-applet)# <b>action</b> <i>number[.number2]</i> <i>action-statementpython-filename</i>	Configures an action statement for the policy. See <a href="#">Action Statement Configuration, on page 228</a> .  Repeat Step 6 for multiple action statements.
<b>Step 7</b>	switch(config-applet)# <b>show event manager</b> <b>policy-state</b> <i>name</i> [ <b>module</b> <i>module-id</i> ]	Displays information about the status of the configured policy.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 8</b>	switch(config-applet)# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

### Example

Sample Python file (Python.py). Copy this file to the bootflash.

```
import re
import cisco
cisco.cli ("show interface eth 1/1-32 transceiver detail >> bootflash:link_flap.txt")
```

This example shows how to define a user policy by using the CLI and invoking a Python script by using the action statement once the event is triggered:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# event manager applet PYTHON
switch(config-applet)# description "Triggers PYTHON Script"
switch(config-applet)# event cli match "shutdown"
switch(config-applet)# action 1.0 cli local python bootflash:Python.py
switch(config-applet)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Verifying the EEM Configuration

To display EEM configuration information, enter one of the following commands:

Command	Purpose
<b>show event manager environment</b> [ <i>variable-name</i>   <b>all</b> ]	Displays information about the event manager environment variables.
<b>show event manager event-types</b> [ <i>event</i>   <b>all</b>   <i>module slot</i> ]	Displays information about the event manager event types.
<b>show event manager history events</b> [ <b>detail</b> ] [ <b>maximum</b> <i>num-events</i> ] [ <b>severity</b> { <b>catastrophic</b>   <b>minor</b>   <b>moderate</b>   <b>severe</b> }]	Displays the history of events for all policies.
<b>show event manager policy internal</b> [ <i>policy-name</i> ] [ <b>inactive</b> ]	Displays information about the configured policies.
<b>show event manager policy-state</b> <i>policy-name</i>	Displays information about the policy state, including thresholds.
<b>show event manager script system</b> [ <i>policy-name</i>   <b>all</b> ]	Displays information about the script policies.
<b>show event manager system-policy</b> [ <b>all</b> ]	Displays information about the predefined system policies.

Command	Purpose
<b>show running-config eem</b>	Displays information about the running configuration for EEM.
<b>show startup-config eem</b>	Displays information about the startup configuration for EEM.

## Configuration Examples for EEM

This example shows how to override the `__ethpm_link_flap` system policy and shut down the interface:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# event manager applet ethport override __ethpm_link_flap
switch(config-applet)# event policy-default count 2 time 1000
switch(config-applet)# action 1 cli conf t
switch(config-applet)# action 2 cli int et1/1
switch(config-applet)# action 3 cli no shut
```

This example shows how to create an EEM policy that allows the CLI command to execute but trigger an SNMP notification when a user enters configuration mode on the device:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# event manager applet TEST
switch(config-applet)# event cli match "conf t"
switch(config-applet)# action 1.0 snmp-trap strdata "Configuration change"
switch(config-applet)# action 2.0 event-default
```



### Note

You must add the event-default action statement to the EEM policy, or EEM does not allow the CLI command to execute.

This example shows how to correlate multiple events in an EEM policy and execute the policy based on a combination of the event triggers. In this example, the EEM policy is triggered if one of the specified syslog patterns occurs within 120 seconds:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# event manager applet eem-correlate
switch(config-applet)# event syslog tag one pattern "copy bootflash:.* running-config.*"
switch(config-applet)# event syslog tag two pattern "copy run start"
switch(config-applet)# event syslog tag three pattern "hello"
switch(config-applet)# tag one or two or three happens 1 in 120
switch(config-applet)# action 1.0 reload module 1
```







## INDEX

### A

- AAA synchronization time [164](#)
  - SNMP [164](#)
- ACL log [111](#)
  - match level [111](#)
- ACL logging [111](#)
  - applying to an interface [111](#)
- ACL logging cache [110](#)
  - configuring [110](#)
- action statement configuration [228](#)
- activating [230](#)
  - VSH script policy [230](#)
- activating sessions [182](#)
  - SPAN [182](#)
- adding show commands, alert groups [129](#)
  - smart call home [129](#)
- alert groups [117](#)
  - smart call home [117](#)
- associating alert groups [129](#)
  - smart call home [129](#)

### C

- cache [110](#)
  - logging [110](#)
    - configuring [110](#)
- call home notifications [134, 135](#)
  - full-text format for syslog [134](#)
  - XML format for syslog [135](#)
- CFS [42, 47, 54, 59, 60, 61](#)
  - clearing a locked session [47](#)
  - distributing NTP configurations [59](#)
  - distributing RADIUS configurations [60](#)
  - distributing Smart Call Home configurations [54](#)
  - distributing TACACS+ configurations [61](#)
  - guidelines [42](#)
  - limitations [42](#)
- clearing [47, 112](#)
  - ACL logs [112](#)
  - locked sessions [47](#)
- clock management [65](#)
  - PTP [65](#)
- committing [214](#)
  - NTP configuration changes [214](#)

- configuration example [199, 200](#)
  - ERSPAN [199, 200](#)
    - source [199, 200](#)
- configuration examples [200, 216, 237](#)
  - EEM [237](#)
  - ERSPAN sessions [200](#)
  - NTP [216](#)
  - truncated ERSPAN [200](#)
- configuration sync after reboot [23](#)
  - switch profiles [23](#)
- configuring [112, 207, 208, 209, 211, 212, 213, 232](#)
  - device as an authoritative NTP server [207](#)
  - NTP authentication [209, 211](#)
  - NTP logging [213](#)
  - NTP server and peer [208](#)
  - NTP source interface [213](#)
  - NTP source IP address [212](#)
  - rate limiter for ACL logging [112](#)
  - syslog as EEM publisher [232](#)
- contact information, configuring [124](#)
  - smart call home [124](#)
- creating, deleting sessions [176](#)
  - SPAN [176](#)

### D

- default parameters [191](#)
  - ERSPAN [191](#)
- default settings [90, 123, 206, 224](#)
  - EEM [224](#)
  - for NTP [206](#)
  - rollback [90](#)
  - smart call home [123](#)
- default SNMP settings [151](#)
- defining [224, 225, 230](#)
  - environment variable [224](#)
  - policy using a VSH script [230](#)
  - user policy using the CLI [225](#)
- defining a user policy [233, 235](#)
  - using the CLI to trigger a Python script [235](#)
  - using the CLI to trigger a Tcl script [233](#)
- description, configuring [182](#)
  - SPAN [182](#)
- destination ports, characteristics [175](#)
  - SPAN [175](#)

- destination profile, creating [126](#)
  - smart call home [126](#)
- destination profile, modifying [127](#)
  - smart call home [127](#)
- destination profiles [116](#)
  - smart call home [116](#)
- destinations [174](#)
  - SPAN [174](#)
- device IDs [119](#)
  - call home format [119](#)
- diagnostics [91, 92, 93, 94](#)
  - configuring [93](#)
  - default settings [94](#)
  - expansion modules [93](#)
  - health monitoring [92](#)
  - runtime [91](#)
- disabling [206](#)
  - NTP [206](#)
- discarding [215](#)
  - NTP configuration changes [215](#)
- displaying information [184](#)
  - SPAN [184](#)
- duplicate message throttling, disabling [132, 133](#)
  - smart call home [132, 133](#)

## E

- e-mail details, configuring [130](#)
  - smart call home [130](#)
- e-mail notifications [115](#)
  - smart call home [115](#)
- EEM [220, 221, 222, 223, 224](#)
  - action statements [222](#)
  - default settings [224](#)
  - event correlation [222](#)
  - event statements [221](#)
  - guidelines and limitations [223](#)
  - licensing requirements [223](#)
  - policies [220](#)
  - prerequisites [223](#)
  - virtualization support [223](#)
- enabling [206, 214](#)
  - CFS distribution for NTP [214](#)
  - NTP [206](#)
- ERSPAN [187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192, 194, 196, 199, 200, 201](#)
  - configuring source sessions [192, 194](#)
  - default parameters [191](#)
  - high availability [190](#)
  - information about [187](#)
  - licensing requirements [190](#)
  - monitored traffic [188](#)
  - prerequisites [190](#)
  - related documents [201](#)
  - sessions [189](#)
    - multiple [189](#)

- ERSPAN (*continued*)
  - source [199, 200](#)
    - configuration example [199, 200](#)
  - source sessions [192, 194](#)
    - configuring for ERSPAN [192, 194](#)
  - sources [189](#)
  - truncated [189, 196, 200](#)
    - configuration example [200](#)
  - types [188](#)
- ERSPAN sessions [200](#)
  - configuration example [200](#)
- Ethernet destination port, configuring [176](#)
  - SPAN [176](#)
- event statement configuration [226](#)
- example, local and peer sync [29](#)
  - switch profiles [29](#)
- executing a session [89](#)

## F

- facility messages logging [101](#)
  - configuring [101](#)
- feature groups, creating [83](#)
  - RBAC [83](#)
- Fibre Channel destination port, configuring [179](#)
  - SPAN [179](#)
- filtering SNMP requests [153](#)

## G

- GOLD diagnostics [91, 92, 93](#)
  - configuring [93](#)
  - expansion modules [93](#)
  - health monitoring [92](#)
  - runtime [91](#)
- guidelines and limitations [10, 66, 79, 96, 123, 151, 205, 223](#)
  - EEM [223](#)
  - for NTP [205](#)
  - PTP [66](#)
  - smart call home [123](#)
  - SNMP [151](#)
  - switch profiles [10](#)
  - system message logging [96](#)
  - user accounts [79](#)

## H

- health monitoring diagnostics [92](#)
  - information [92](#)
- high availability [66](#)
  - PTP [66](#)
    - high availability [66](#)

**I**

- IDs [119](#)
  - serial IDs [119](#)
- information about [35, 109, 204, 219](#)
  - ACL logging [109](#)
  - clock manager [204](#)
  - distributing NTP using CFS [204](#)
  - embedded event manager (EEM) [219](#)
  - module pre-provisioning [35](#)
  - NTP as time server [204](#)
- interfaces, configuring [69](#)
  - PTP [69](#)

**L**

- licensing [66, 96, 151](#)
  - PTP [66](#)
    - licensing [66](#)
  - SNMP [151](#)
  - system message logging [96](#)
- licensing requirements [190](#)
  - ERSPAN [190](#)
- linkDown notifications [161, 162](#)
- linkUp notifications [161, 162](#)
- locked session [47](#)
  - clearing [47](#)
- logging [101, 111](#)
  - ACL log match level [111](#)
  - facility messages [101](#)
  - module messages [101](#)
- logging cache [110](#)
  - configuring [110](#)

**M**

- message encryption [153](#)
  - SNMP [153](#)
- mgmt0 interface [111](#)
  - ACL logging [111](#)
- module messages logging [101](#)
  - configuring [101](#)
- module pre-provisioning [35](#)
  - information about [35](#)

**N**

- notification receivers [154](#)
  - SNMP [154](#)
- NTP configurations [59](#)
  - using CFS to distribute [59](#)

**O**

- overriding [231](#)
  - a policy [231](#)

**P**

- password requirements [78](#)
- periodic inventory notifications, configuring [131](#)
  - smart call home [131](#)
- prerequisites [190, 205](#)
  - ERSPAN [190](#)
  - NTP [205](#)
- PTP [63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 69](#)
  - clock management [65](#)
    - NTP [65](#)
  - configuring globally [67](#)
  - default settings [66](#)
  - device types [64](#)
  - guidelines and limitations [66](#)
  - interface, configuring [69](#)
  - overview [63](#)
  - process [65](#)

**R**

- RADIUS configurations [60](#)
  - using CFS to distribute [60](#)
- RBAC [73, 74, 75, 77, 79, 81, 83, 84, 85](#)
  - feature groups, creating [83](#)
  - rules [75](#)
  - user account restrictions [77](#)
  - user accounts, configuring [79](#)
  - user role interface policies, changing [83](#)
  - user role VLAN policies, changing [84](#)
  - user role VSAN policies, changing [85](#)
  - user roles [73](#)
  - user roles and rules, configuring [81](#)
  - verifying [85](#)
- registering [124, 230](#)
  - smart call home [124](#)
  - VSH script policy [230](#)
- related documents [201](#)
  - ERSPAN [201](#)
- releasing [215](#)
  - CSF session lock [215](#)
- requirements [78](#)
  - user passwords [78](#)
- roles [73](#)
  - authentication [73](#)
- rollback [87, 90](#)
  - checkpoint copy [87](#)
  - creating a checkpoint copy [87](#)
  - default settings [90](#)
  - deleting a checkpoint file [87](#)

- rollback (*continued*)
  - description [87](#)
  - example configuration [87](#)
  - guidelines [87](#)
  - high availability [87](#)
  - implementing a rollback [87](#)
  - limitations [87](#)
  - reverting to checkpoint file [87](#)
  - verifying configuration [90](#)
- rules [75](#)
  - RBAC [75](#)
- running config, displaying [27](#)
  - switch profiles [27](#)
- runtime diagnostics [91](#)
  - information [91](#)

## S

- SAN admin user, configuring [80](#)
  - RBAC [80](#)
- SAN admin, user role [74](#)
- serial IDs [119](#)
  - description [119](#)
- server IDs [119](#)
  - description [119](#)
- session manager [87, 89, 90](#)
  - committing a session [89](#)
  - configuring an ACL session (example) [89](#)
  - description [87](#)
  - discarding a session [89](#)
  - guidelines [87](#)
  - limitations [87](#)
  - saving a session [89](#)
  - verifying configuration [90](#)
  - verifying the session [89](#)
- smart call home [115, 116, 117, 123, 124, 126, 127, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134](#)
  - adding show commands, alert groups [129](#)
  - alert groups [117](#)
  - associating alert groups [129](#)
  - contact information, configuring [124](#)
  - default settings [123](#)
  - description [115](#)
  - destination profile, creating [126](#)
  - destination profile, modifying [127](#)
  - destination profiles [116](#)
  - duplicate message throttling, disabling [132, 133](#)
  - e-mail details, configuring [130](#)
  - guidelines and limitations [123](#)
  - message format options [116](#)
  - periodic inventory notifications [131](#)
  - prerequisites [123](#)
  - registering [124](#)
  - testing the configuration [133](#)
  - verifying [134](#)

- Smart Call Home configurations [54](#)
  - using CFS to distribute [54](#)
- smart call home messages [116, 118](#)
  - configuring levels [118](#)
  - format options [116](#)
- SNMP [147, 148, 149, 150, 151, 152, 153, 154, 157, 158, 164](#)
  - access groups [151](#)
  - configuring users [152](#)
  - default settings [151](#)
  - disabling [164](#)
  - filtering requests [153](#)
  - functional overview [147](#)
  - group-based access [151](#)
  - guidelines and limitations [151](#)
  - inband access [158](#)
  - licensing [151](#)
  - message encryption [153](#)
  - modifying AAA synchronization time [164](#)
  - notification receivers [154](#)
  - security model [149](#)
  - source interface [157](#)
  - trap notifications [148](#)
  - user synchronization with CLI [150](#)
  - user-based security [149](#)
    - SNMP [149](#)
  - version 3 security features [148](#)
- SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) [148](#)
  - versions [148](#)
- SNMP notification receivers [155](#)
  - configuring with VRFs [155](#)
- SNMP notifications [156](#)
  - filtering based on a VRF [156](#)
- SNMPv3 [148, 153](#)
  - assigning multiple roles [153](#)
  - security features [148](#)
- source IDs [119](#)
  - call home event format [119](#)
- source ports, characteristics [174](#)
  - SPAN [174](#)
- source ports, configuring [180](#)
  - SPAN [180](#)
- SPAN [173, 174, 175, 176, 179, 180, 181, 182, 184](#)
  - activating sessions [182](#)
  - characteristics, source ports [174](#)
  - creating, deleting sessions [176](#)
  - description, configuring [182](#)
  - destination ports, characteristics [175](#)
  - destinations [174](#)
  - displaying information [184](#)
  - egress sources [173](#)
  - Ethernet destination port, configuring [176](#)
  - Fibre Channel destination port, configuring [179](#)
  - ingress sources [173](#)
  - source port channels, configuring [181](#)
  - source ports, configuring [180](#)
  - sources for monitoring [173](#)

SPAN (*continued*)

- VLANs, configuring [181](#)
- VSANs, configuring [181](#)
- SPAN sources [173](#)
  - egress [173](#)
  - ingress [173](#)
- switch profile buffer, displaying [22, 30](#)
- switch profiles [10, 22, 23, 27, 28, 29, 30](#)
  - buffer, displaying [22, 30](#)
  - configuration sync after reboot [23](#)
  - example, local and peer sync [27, 29](#)
  - guidelines and limitations [10](#)
  - running config, displaying [27](#)
  - verify and commit, displaying [28](#)
- Switched Port Analyzer [173](#)
- syslog [103, 111](#)
  - ACL log match level [111](#)
  - configuring [103](#)
- system message logging [95, 96](#)
  - guidelines and limitations [96](#)
  - information about [95](#)
  - licensing [96](#)
- system message logging settings [96](#)
  - defaults [96](#)

**T**

- TACACS+ configurations [61](#)
  - using CFS to distribute [61](#)
- testing the configuration [133](#)
  - smart call home [133](#)
- trap notifications [148](#)

**U**

- user account restrictions [77](#)
  - RBAC [77](#)
- user accounts [78, 79, 85](#)
  - guidelines and limitations [79](#)
  - passwords [78](#)
  - verifying [85](#)
- user role interface policies, changing [83](#)
  - RBAC [83](#)
- user role VLAN policies, changing [84](#)
  - RBAC [84](#)
- user role VSAN policies, changing [85](#)
- user role, RBAC [74](#)
  - SAN admin [74](#)
- user roles [73](#)
  - RBAC [73](#)
- user roles and rules, creating [81](#)
  - RBAC [81](#)
- users [73](#)
  - description [73](#)

**V**

- verifying [85, 113, 134, 215, 236](#)
  - ACL logging [113](#)
  - EEM configuration [236](#)
  - NTP configuration [215](#)
  - RBAC [85](#)
  - smart call home [134](#)
  - user accounts [85](#)
- VRFs [155, 156](#)
  - configuring SNMP notification receivers with [155](#)
  - filtering SNMP notifications [156](#)
- VSH script policies [222](#)

